







ADDRESSING GENDER-BASED VIOLENCE IN SOUTH AFRICAN SCHOOLS

A MANUAL FOR EDUCATORS SECOND EDITION



Copyright © 2015

First edition published 2001 in partnership with the then Department of Education and Canada South Africa Education Management Programme and funded through CIDA now DFATD.

Second edition 2015 developed by the Department of Basic Education in collaboration with the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), the Tshwaranang Legal Advocacy Centre and MIET Africa.

Department of Basic Education

Sol Plaatje House 222 Struben Street Pretoria 0001

UNICEF

P O Box 4884 Pretoria 0001

Tshwaranang Legal Advocacy Centre

P O Box 31006 Braamfontein 2017

MIET Africa

P O Box 37590 Overport 4067

This document may be freely reviewed, abstracted, reproduced and translated, in part or in whole, but is neither for sale nor for use in conjunction with commercial purposes.

Editor: Liz Haines

Illustrations and creative direction: Nick Walsh

Design and layout: Handmade Communications, viv@handmadecom.co.za

CONTENTS

	Foreword	V
	Acknowledgments	vi
	About Opening Our Eyes	1
	How to use this manual	2
	Useful resources	3
	Background information to Workshops 1-8	4
	Guidelines for facilitating activities focused on sensitive topics	6
W	ORKSHOP 1. GENDER-BASED VIOLENCE: AN INTRODUCTION	15
	Background information for Workshop 1	16
	Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 1	28
	Guidelines for presenting Workshop 1 topics	30
	Suggested follow-up activities	37
	Handouts for Workshop 1	38
W	ORKSHOP 2. RECOGNISING HARASSMENT AND TAKING ACTION	47
	Background information for Workshop 2	48
	Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 2	54
	Guidelines for presenting Workshop 2 topics	56
	Suggested follow-up activities	63
	Useful resources	63
	Handouts for Workshop 2	64
W	ORKSHOP 3. DEALING WITH HATE CRIMES AT SCHOOL	79
	Background information for Workshop 3	80
	Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 3	84
	Guidelines for presenting Workshop 3 topics	86
	Suggested follow-up activities	92
	Useful resources	93
	LGBTI organisations	94
	Handouts for Workshop 3	96
W	ORKSHOP 4. RESPONDING TO SITUATIONS OF CHILD ABUSE	105
	Background information for Workshop 4	106
	Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 4	114
	Guidelines for presenting Workshop 4 topics	116
	Suggested follow-up activities	124
	Useful resources	125
	Handouts for Workshop 4	126

CONTENTS

WORKSHOP 5. GENDER, GENDER-BASED VIOLENCE AND HIV	
AND AIDS	139
Background information for Workshop 5	140
Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 5	146
Guidelines for presenting Workshop 5 topics	148
Suggested follow-up activities	155
Useful resources	155
Handouts for Workshop 5	156
WORKSHOP 6. EDUCATORS AS FACILITATORS OF HEALING	163
Background information for Workshop 6	164
Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 6	168
Guidelines for presenting Workshop 6 topics	170
Useful resources	182
Handouts for Workshop 6	184
WORKSHOP 7. A SCHOOL POLICY ON GENDER-BASED VIOLENCE	207
Background information for Workshop 7	208
Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 7	212
Guidelines for presenting Workshop 7 topics	214
Suggested follow-up activities	220
Handouts for Workshop 7	222
WORKSHOP 8. A WHOLE-SCHOOL APPROACH TO GENDER-	
BASED VIOLENCE	231
Background information for Workshop 8	232
Facilitator's guidelines for Workshop 8	246
Guidelines for presenting Workshop 8 topics	248
Suggested follow-up activity	255
Handouts for Workshop 8	256
APPENDICES	265
References and resources	266
Legislation	269
Glossary	270



by the Acting Director-General of the Department of Basic Education

Alarmingly, learners are often reported to be perpetrators of sexual violence and abuse of fellow learners. In addition, we have noted with grave concern that increasingly, educators, who have been placed as *loco parentis* in classrooms, are often perpetrators of sexual violence, abuse and harassment in schools. Educators and learners who sexually abuse others in schools must face the consequences of their actions. Government, together with schools, must be accountable to bring perpetrators to justice and protect the victims of violence. However, we must also recognise that any attempt to curb violence occurring in schools needs to extend beyond the school itself. Parental and community support is vital for success.

Schools are also in a unique position to identify sexual violence and to implement prevention strategies that can reduce vulnerability to violence while entrenching accountability for learner safety in schools. This revised manual is intended to assist teachers, parents and learners to identify, reduce and prevent gender-based violence in schools. It is a professional development tool for schools. The manual makes important reference to the overarching legal framework that provides information on preventative measures, reporting obligations and remedies for victims of sexual violence. Where educators are identified as perpetrators of sexual violence, abuse and harassment in a school, the manual offers practical guidance on the school's response. Additionally, the manual also guides school governing bodies, in terms of their own school policy development processes, in ensuring that they deal effectively and adequately with all manifestations of gender-based violence of learners.

The revised manual has been tested in eight provinces with the support of the United Kingdom's Department for International Development and the United Nations Children's Fund. The testing has shown that the manual is effective in addressing the need for information, education and skills for addressing sexual violence in schools. I trust that you will find the manual not only informative but practical, as we intensify our effort to ensure safer schools. We ought not to see this only as a legal and constitutional imperative. Rather, we ought to be mindful that we all have a moral and ethical responsibility to ensure that our children are safe and protected from all harm. In the unfortunate event that all else fails, our educators and caregivers need to be fully equipped to deal with this challenge.

It is for this reason that I encourage all district officials, educators and school governing bodies to use the manual effectively to raise awareness of the scourge of sexual violence and to work actively to create a violence-free school environment that is conducive to quality teaching and learning and is in the best interests of our children's futures.

S G Padaychee

Acting Director-General, Department of Basic Education

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Acknowledgment and thanks to:

- The United Kingdom's Department for International Development (DFID) for their generous funding, without which the update of the publication would not have been possible.
- The Department of Basic Education for their lead role in coordinating and facilitating the development of this manual.
- The United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) for technical support.
- The Tshwaranang Legal Advocacy Centre to End Violence Against Women for providing a strong legal background for the manual, for their analytical and critical reading expertise and for field-testing the manual in eight provinces.
- MIET Africa for their contribution to the adaptation of the material and their role in aligning the publication with current legislation and policies, including the *National School Safety Framework*, the *Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse* handbook for learners and for use of relevant MIET Africa materials.







ABOUT OPENING OUR EYES

Background to this manual

In 2001, the Department of Basic Education and the Canada-South Africa Education Management Programme published the first Opening Our Eyes - Addressing Gender-Based Violence in South African Schools - a Manual for Educators.

The development of this manual began with the Gender Equity Task Team report published in 1998. This report recommended that the Department of Education (now known as the Department of Basic Education) should develop a training package for education managers, including school governing bodies, educators and caretakers, on their responsibility to prevent discrimination (including gendered violence and harassment). The Gender Equity Task Team further recommended that curriculum packages should incorporate learning about gender and violence at all levels of education.

In 1999, the draft manual was workshopped with districts and school-based gender focal persons, including Life Skills officials. During 2000, presentations on the draft manual were made at the Education Management Association of South Africa Conference and at the Safe Schools Conference at Rand Afrikaans University.

The revised manual

The revision of this manual brings it in line with the latest developments in genderbased violence (GBV) programmes, laws and policies that have been passed since 2001. These include the case law that has significantly impacted on response and prevention strategies in South Africa. The manual also incorporates violence prevention models such as the World Health Organization ecological model (2002).

Target audience

Opening Our Eyes has been developed for the training of education officials and educators as master trainers. The manual can be easily adapted and used for the training of school governing bodies and school management teams on addressing GBV. Curriculum developers can also use this manual to design their own school curricula.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

This manual consists of eight workshops. The workshops are between 2 hours 30 minutes and 4 hours 30 minutes long.

For each workshop the facilitator will need:

- A workshop planning checklist (see page 4)
- A workshop checklist (see page 5)
- A workshop programme (see page 5)
- · Background information
- Materials (e.g. handouts, flipcharts, markers, laptop for PowerPoint presentations)

Background information

Each workshop has its own background notes which contain important information and statistics. Read these notes before presenting workshops to help you feel confident and well prepared for the sessions. You can also share some of this background information with participants during workshops. In some workshops, we direct facilitators to specific pages they can either use for PowerPoint presentations or copy and hand out to participants.

After the *Background information* you will find *Facilitator guidelines* for each workshop, which contain:

- · A list of objectives
- · A list of outcomes
- · An outline of topics with time allocations
- · A list of materials
- · A list of handouts

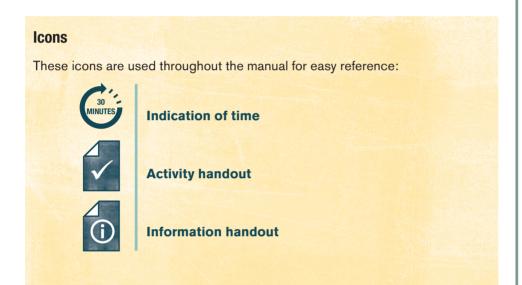
Follow the *Guidelines for presenting workshops* for each topic. The guidelines:

- Indicate the topics within the workshop, the length of time the topics should take to complete and what materials will be necessary.
- Suggest how to work through the topic (e.g. work in small groups, report back in groups, use a PowerPoint presentation).
- Provide suggested answers and responses to tasks and activities.
- Suggest follow-up activities that facilitators can use at their discretion.
- Sometimes identify helpful resources which facilitators can use to increase their background knowledge or get in contact with experts in the field.



Handouts

Each workshop includes handouts. Make as many copies as you will need ahead of the workshop presentation; sometimes participants will need their own copy of a handout, and in other instances pairs or groups of participants can share handouts.



USEFUL RESOURCES

Department of Basic Education. 2013. Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse. Pretoria.

Department of Basic Education. 2014a. Challenging Homophobic Bullying in Schools. Pretoria.

Department of Basic Education. 2014b. National School Safety Framework.

These publications are available from provincial and district Department of Basic Education offices.



Workshop planning

WORKSHOP PLANNING CHECKLIST

ACTION	WHEN DONE ✓	REMINDERS AND NOTES
INITIAL PLANS:		
Set a date		
Identify and list participants		
Book suitable venue and confirm available resources (e.g. chairs, electricity, etc.)		
Invite participants: advise date, time, venue, transport and catering arrangements and things they should bring to the meeting (e.g. school policies)		
Organise catering, if relevant		
Organise travel arrangements, if relevant		
Plan workshop outline and resources required		
Book/organise resources		
A WEEK BEFORE:		
Remind participants and confirm numbers		
Confirm caterers (including numbers)		
Confirm travel arrangements (including numbers)		
Organise/confirm resources required (printing, projector, etc.) and when they will arrive		
Confirm the venue and your requirements (e.g. number of chairs, type of facilities required)		
ON THE DAY:		
Set up the venue (seating, check toilets and other facilities, etc.)		
Check that all equipment/resources have arrived/are working		
Prepare for registration		
AFTER THE WORKSHOP:		
Venue: tidy, pack away and lock up in accordance with agreement		
Tidy up materials used		
Reflect on and evaluate workshop successes and areas of difficulty		
Give feedback to relevant stakeholders		
Send letters of thanks where relevant		



WORKSHOP CHECKLIST

WORKSHOP CHECKLIST	✓ WHEN DONE	REMINDERS AND NOTES
Facilitator manual/notes		
Attendance register		
Glue		
Pens/pencils/marker pens		
Paper		
Prestik®		
Name tags		
Flipchart paper and pens		
Other equipment		
Workshop handouts (e.g. agenda, specified activities and notes)		
Additional material required		

EXAMPLE WORKSHOP PROGRAMME

WORKSHOP 3. RECOGNISING HARASSMENT AND TAKING ACTION

Date: Time: Venue:

Venue:	
PROGRAMME OF EVENTS:	
Tea and registration	8 a.m.
Housekeeping and ground rules	8.30 a.m.
Workshop objectives and outcomes	8.45 a.m.
Introduction and icebreaker	9 a.m.
Topic 1. Defining terms and exploring examples	9.15 a.m.
Tea	10 a.m.
Topic 2. What do we know about homosexuality?	10.15 a.m.
Topic 3. Looking at homosexuality	10.45 a.m.
Tea	11 a.m.
Topic 4. Where to begin?	11.15 a.m.
Topic 5. Standing up to homophobic bullying at school	11.30 p.m.
Conclusion, evaluation and closure	12.30 p.m.

GUIDELINES FOR FACILITATING ACTIVITIES FOCUSED ON SENSITIVE TOPICS

Ground rules

Agree on ground rules to create a safe place for participants to talk freely.

Dealing with emotions

Discussions on harassment and abuse can be emotional, so be prepared to deal with your own feelings and those of participants. Provide information on where participants can access help and support. You might even need to have a counsellor on hand for some of the workshops.

Grouping

Strategically plan your grouping arrangements when dealing with sensitive topics in workshops, particularly when presenting to men and women/boys and girls together. You may need to use single-sex groups for some tasks or activities. Combine the sexes again after participants have had a chance to articulate their ideas confidently.

Reassuring

Females are more likely to be targets of gender-based violence (GBV); however, you need to emphasise that the activities do not target and blame all men. Instead, activities address problematic forms of behaviour, beliefs and attitudes. Emphasise that some men are working to eradicate violence against women and children, and point out that males can be abused and that the abuse of boys is believed to be considerably more widespread than the number of reported incidents.

Getting participation

- Talk about what is important to participants.
- Ensure that everyone participates and has a chance to speak. Are participants communicating well? Is anyone dominating the discussion? Who hasn't expressed an opinion?
- Encourage participants to listen to and understand each other's views. Discourage criticism, ridicule, blaming and personal belittling, and refer to the ground rules when necessary.
- Don't express personal views or take sides. Your role is to guide the discussion and keep participants focused on the issues, not join in.
- Don't fear silence. Encouraging participants to examine their feelings is essential, so give them time to think about what has been said and to consider the options.
- Show respect for each participant by summarising their opinions. Point out that there are no right or wrong answers in a discussion.

Achieving focus and ease

Keep the group focused on the topic. You might have to restate key questions: 'How does your point relate to learner GBV?' or 'That's an interesting point, but let's return to the central issue.'



Anticipate conflict and when it arises explain that disagreement is to be expected, but don't allow it to become personal. Appeal to the group to help resolve the conflict and refer to the ground rules when necessary.

Using icebreakers

Make use of icebreakers and exercises that involve physical activity to relax participants and encourage them to talk to each other. This is helpful especially if they are meeting for the first time.

Time: extending the workshop

You may wish to extend a particular workshop beyond the suggested length of time because activities often generate considerable discussion, and some participants will appreciate extra time.

Approximately half of the workshop activities focus on understanding the topic and the necessary background information to the issues. The remaining activities focus on positive actions and strategies for schools and individuals. Where possible, extend the available time for some or all of the activities and conduct a morning and an afternoon session. You could also run the workshops over several sessions, during a week or fortnight. Many topics and activities will benefit from participant reflection on personal attitudes and current practices before participants reconvene to discuss strategies for practical action (during the second half of the workshop activities).

Another possibility is to combine two workshops that partner well, such as Workshops 4 and 5.

Outside speakers

Workshops often benefit from the participation of outside speakers (e.g. people with particular expertise from the school community) and the use of posters and videos.

The starting point: considering values

Participants in workshop activities need to review their own value systems if they are to respond meaningfully to GBV in their schools and communities.

The activity on pages 8 and 9 will help participants decide on their personal key values before engaging in the workshop activities. Ubuntu is the core traditional value that is supported by relevant human rights identified in the South African Constitution and other values relevant to issues dealt with in this manual. The value statement list is followed by questions to help participants reflect on this activity.

Participants can repeat this exercise during and/or after the cycle of workshop activities in order to discover whether their values and attitudes have developed and changed - and if so, how and why they have altered. This will, in turn, help participants to facilitate a review of values with their own learners and colleagues.

CONSIDERING VALUES: AN ACTIVITY

Do these activities individually.

Part A

- Read the following value statements. What does each statement mean in practice?
- Decide if you Agree, Partly agree or Disagree with each statement and tick the appropriate column.

Follow up this individual task with a group reflection on some or all of the values, using the questions on page 9.

VALUE STATEMENT	AGREE	PARTLY AGREE	DISAGREE
1. Ubuntu: A person is a person through other people. (This means respecting others and recognising their humanity. It reminds us that we need one another and that we find ourselves through our relationships with others.)			
2. Respect between males and females: Men/boys and women/girls should treat each other with respect and as equals. Practices such as name-calling, 'sexting', issuing unwanted sexual invitations or spreading sexual rumours are unacceptable.			
3. Respect from educators: Educators should treat male, female and homosexual learners with equal respect.			
4. Caring: It is important for both men and women to be able to care for other people's feelings and needs.			
5. Assertiveness: It is important for both men and women to be able to express what they think, believe and want.			
6. Tolerance: Stigmatising pregnant learners, for example, is a form of abuse. They should be supported and encouraged to continue and complete their education as soon as possible.			
7. Openness: Learners should be able to discuss issues of sex and gender openly with an understanding adult.			
8. Confidentiality: Educators should treat learner disclosures of abuse with confidentiality that is as complete as possible.			
9. Safety: Learners need to feel physically and emotionally safe at school, whatever their sex, sexual orientation or particular disability. They need to be confident that action will be taken if their safety is threatened.			

How did you rate?

Score 2 for each Agree, 1 for each Partly agree and 0 for each Disagree.

- 16-18: Well done! Looks like you generally support gender equality, reject all or most forms of GBV, and could be serious about your responsibilities to educate and support your learners.
- 12-15: Getting there! Looks like you have the makings of a core value system on gender but may be uncertain how some values play out in practice.
- 8-11: You have some sense of values around gender but you have not worked out how they connect and apply.
- 4-7: You have uncertain and disconnected values. You need to work hard at your value system if you want to be of use to your learners.
- **Under 3:** Careful! You may be a danger to your learners.

Part B

Some questions for reflection:

- 1. Do you feel that you have a system of values that you can apply effectively to the gender violence and abuse issues that you encounter in your school and community?
- 2. How closely do your own values match the proposed values in the list? Do the proposed values feel real or unrealistic to you in terms of your own life experience and the values you have lived by so far? How does this match (or mismatch) of values make you think and feel?
- 3. To what extent have your learners been raised with value systems that support them and the choices they have to make, especially with regard to sex and gender relations generally (e.g. their attitudes and behaviour towards the opposite gender)?
- 4. If you wanted to develop the proposed values in your school/learners, which value might you start with? Why?

PRE- AND POST-TRAINING ASSESSMENTS

Pre-training assessments can be very useful tools for facilitators to establish knowledge and values at the start of a training cycle. Assessments will help to determine training needs and allow facilitators to 'start from where participants are'.

Give the following assessment at the beginning of the training and again at the end. You will find suggested responses to the questions on page 12. Compare the marks of the participants for both the pre- and post-assessments to determine what the training has achieved and to also determine further training requirements.

ASSESSMENT

1. 'Gender' and 'sex' have the same meaning and can be used interchangeably.

True or false?

- 2. Gender equality is an issue relevant to:
- a. Women and girls; it is a women's issue.
- **b.** Developing countries; it is only there that gender gaps exist.
- c. All societies, women and men alike.
- 3. GBV is violence that is perpetrated by men against women and girls.

True or false?

- 4. Circle the correct statement:
- **a.** Male violence towards women is instinctive. Women have to accept a certain degree of violence.
- **b.** Violence against women is a manifestation of prevailing unequal power relations between women and men.
- c. It is also the woman's fault if a man is violent with a woman.
- 5. Why are girls more likely than boys to miss out on secondary education in developing countries?
- a. Because of high school fees, only boys go to school.
- **b.** Many adolescent girls are expected to help out at home.
- c. Early/forced marriage restricts girls' mobility and freedom.
- d. All of the above.
- 6. A woman can rape a man.

True or false?

7. A protection order is issued by the police after you open a case with them. True or false?
8. A person who has been raped cannot open a case if he/she has washed. True or false?
9. Write your own definition of GBV. How well do you understand GBV?
10. It is okay to insult someone whose sexual orientation is different to yours. Agree or disagree?
11. It is okay to hit someone who is gay or lesbian. Agree or disagree?
12. Learners should respect their educators at all times, no matter what the situation. Agree or disagree?
13. Boys and girls have equal capacity to learn. Agree or disagree?
14. Young girls bring trouble onto themselves by the way they dress. Agree or disagree?

SUGGESTED RESPONSES

1. False

Sex refers to biological differences between men and women while gender refers to socially constructed roles and responsibilities of men and women.

2. (c) All societies, women and men alike.

Gender equality is not directly correlated to economic development. Gender inequalities also exist in industrialised countries with high gross national product per capita.

Gender equality is not a so-called 'women's issue'. Women's empowerment is necessary but not sufficient in the process towards the ultimate goal of gender equality, which has yet to be achieved in any country in the world.

3. False

GBV is violence directed at a person on the basis of their gender.

4. (b) Violence against women is a manifestation of prevailing unequal power relations between women and men.

Violence affects us all, but in most cases it targets women and girls and is perpetrated by men. This is not to say that men are genetically designed to be violent but that as long as gender inequalities persist in our societies, and as long as serious efforts are not made to build more balanced and mutually supporting gender roles, women will continue to suffer.

5. (d) All of the above.

Poverty and gender inequality are important factors that prevent girls from going to secondary school. At the same time, girls' education is essential for poverty reduction.

6. True

The definition of rape in the 2007 Sexual Offences Act is: "Intentionally and unlawfully committing an act of sexual penetration with a complainant without her or his consent".

7. False

A protection order is applied for at a magistrate's court. It is not necessary to lay a criminal charge before applying for a protection order.

8. False

A case of rape can be opened at any time, even if the victim has washed. It is however advisable for a victim of rape not to take a bath after the incident so that evidence can be collected.

9. Definition of GBV

GBV is any form of violence directed against women, girls, boys and men on the basis of socially attributed differences between males and females.

10 and 11. Disagree

It is not acceptable to insult or hit a person because of his/her different sexual orientation, as this amounts to discrimination on the basis of their sexual orientation which is prohibited in terms of the Bill of Rights of the South African Constitution.

12. Disagree

The answer to this point is complex. However, while respect for educators is encouraged, they are not above the law, meaning that learners are not expected to do whatever the educator demands if it is illegal.

13. Agree

Boys and girls have an equal capacity to learn.

14. Disagree

Any person should be free to dress the way they want, as both boys and girls are equal before the law. The freedom and security of the person, including the right to bodily integrity, are some of the basic rights guaranteed in our Constitution.





1 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Facilitators
should read this
Background
information on
gender-based
violence (GBV)
before conducting
Workshop 1.

NOTE:



This Background information provides an overall introduction to GBV and is therefore longer than introductions for other workshops.

What is violence?

Violence is the intentional use of physical force or power, threatened or actual, against oneself or another person, or against a group or community, that either results in or has a high likelihood of resulting in injury, death, psychological harm, maldevelopment or deprivation (World Health Organization).

What are the basic features of violence?

- It is intentional it is inflicted deliberately.
- It involves force and/or threat direct physical force or the force of power/control.
- It seeks to 'bring down' its target to overpower, kill, harm and/or humiliate him/her.

Who commits violence, and to whom?

- We can do violence/harm to ourselves, even to the extent of committing suicide.
- Individual people or individuals in a group can behave violently towards another person or people (*interpersonal* violence: e.g. domestic violence, school bullying, rape, sexual violation, sexual harassment, GBV).
- The state or other groupings such as terrorist or military groupings or gangs can perpetrate violence (collective violence: e.g. political torture, police brutality, genocide, gang wars).

How is violence expressed?

Some forms are:

Physical violence: Murder, fighting, assault (beating, kicking, slapping, pinching), self-mutilation (e.g. cutting yourself).

Emotional and psychological abuse: Threats, insults/name-calling, stalking, cyberbullying (on social media: cellphones, online, etc.).

Sexual/gender-based violence: Includes many types of physical and psychological violence such as wife-beating, rape, incest, sexual violation and harassment.

Economic abuse: Taking a victim's money, refusing to provide money for household expenses, not paying maintenance.

Hate crime: Acts which constitute criminal offences that are motivated in part or whole by prejudice or hate. These include racism (the belief that all members of a race possess characteristics or abilities specific to that race, especially to distinguish it as inferior or superior to another race), xenophobia (the unreasoned fear of that which is perceived to be foreign or strange), sexism (prejudice, stereotyping or discrimination, typically against women, on the basis of sex), homophobia (the term used to describe the irrational, extreme fear, loathing and intolerance that some people feel towards those whose sexual orientation is towards members of their own sex rather than towards members of the opposite sex) and bigotry (intolerance towards those who hold different opinions from oneself).

Harmful traditional practices: These include *ukuthwala* or early/forced marriage.

What forms of violence are common in our schools?

Various forms and levels of violence are present in many schools. For example, beating/corporal punishment, fighting, learner-learner racial/sexual/homophobic bullying or harassment, cyberbullying, stalking, intimidation and threats, educator-learner sexual and gender-based violence, rape (including gang rape) and even human trafficking and murder.

Violence can take the everyday form of bullying and harassment in schools. Bullying learners (and educators, too) may repeatedly persecute learners who are less powerful because they are younger, shy, unpopular, new, disabled, foreign, homosexual or female. Even low-level bullying and harassment (such as insults) make it easier for more extreme violence to take place.

How does violence affect people?

It results in deaths, injuries, disabilities and deprivation. Psychologically, it creates fear and dread and erodes people's self-esteem and sense of identity. Violence tends to 'take over' people's lives and limit their freedom. They may feel fearful, trapped and vulnerable, especially if they are dependent on the perpetrator. Young children, for example, are very vulnerable to violence. Violence can reduce hope, resilience, confidence and the power of independent action, so that it impacts on people's performance in the world (e.g. at school or at work). Just as people fear walking in the street in a violent neighbourhood, children may fear and avoid going to school when they are bullied, harassed and/or feel unsafe there.

In addition, violence breeds more violence, thus increasing its severity. A lesser form of violence often leads to a more extreme form.

Some forms of violence cannot easily be separated: the term 'gender-based violence' is sometimes used interchangeably with violence against women. However, it is different, as violence against women is just one of many types of GBV. Furthermore, many people experience various forms of violence at the same time. For instance, children who are bullied will be called names and may also be beaten up, and women who are beaten by their partners may also be sexually, verbally, psychologically, financially and emotionally abused.

Gender inequality

From an early age, boys and girls receive messages about what is expected of them as a boy or girl. These early 'gendered' messages usually come from parents, caregivers and other family members or educators, and are often explicit: *Act like a lady; Do as you are told like a good girl; Be strong, like a man. Only girls are crybabies; Hit him back. Show him who's the man!* Other more implicit (hidden) messages are socially constructed and are often seen as 'natural', as if they were biological facts about males and females, e.g. who plays which roles and who has the highest status, power and control in family relationships, in the community, in the workplace and nationally.

1 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Although most cultures around the world have long-held patriarchal (male-dominant) patterns of power and control, many countries are emerging from these patriarchal systems. Women (and many men) are increasingly challenging male dominance and economic and social conditions may also lead to many women holding positions of relative power in their families. However, even when laws and policies are designed to correct the male–female power imbalance and empower women, deeply ingrained everyday patriarchal attitudes and behaviours hold back change at all levels of society. Change can be stressful as men experience women exerting power and control in various spheres of life and feel their status and roles are threatened and uncertain.

The nature of gender-based violence

GBV is violence directed at a person on the basis of their gender.

GBV in our society and our schools seems to be learned behaviour. It reflects the kind of learned attitudes discussed earlier about what it is to be a man or woman in society. For example, boys (and girls too) may think that forced sex is acceptable if they have learned to admire aggression and violence that exerts power over another person and takes sex as a right. In this context, domestic violence in the form of wife-beating is often seen as a normal and even acceptable way to 'discipline' a woman.

Broader areas of GBV which can involve several of the behaviours described above are domestic violence, sexual harassment, harmful customary or traditional practices such as female genital mutilation, forced marriages, trafficking in women and girls, forced prostitution and violations of human rights in armed conflict (e.g. murder, gang rape, sexual slavery and forced pregnancy). Some forms of GBV related to women's reproductive rights are forced sterilisation, forced abortion, forced use of contraceptives and female infanticide (killing girl babies).

The following table describes different types of GBV.

TYPE OF ACT	DESCRIPTION/EXAMPLES	CAN BE PERPETRATED BY			
	SEXUAL VIOLENCE				
Rape and marital rape	The invasion of any part of the body of the victim or of the perpetrator with a sexual organ, or of the anal or genital opening of the victim with any object or any other part of the body by force, threat of force, coercion, taking advantage of a coercive environment, or against a person incapable of giving genuine consent (International Criminal Court).	Any person in a position of power, authority and control, including a husband, intimate partner or caregiver.			
Child sexual abuse, defilement and incest	Any act where a child is used for sexual gratification. Any sexual relations/interaction with a child.	Someone the child trusts, including a parent, sibling, extended family member, friend or stranger, teacher, elder, leader or any other caregiver, or anyone in a position of power, authority and control over a child.			
Forced sodomy/anal rape	Forced/coerced anal intercourse, usually male-to-male or male-to-female.	Any person in a position of power, authority and control.			
Attempted rape or attempted forced sodomy/ anal rape	Attempted forced/coerced intercourse; no penetration.	Any person in a position of power, authority and control.			
Sexual abuse	Actual or threatened physical intrusion of a sexual nature, including inappropriate touching, by force or under unequal or coercive conditions.	Any person in a position of power, authority and control, including family/community members, coworkers including supervisors, or strangers.			
Sexual exploitation	Any abuse of a position of vulnerability, differential power, or trust for sexual purposes; this includes profiting momentarily, socially or politically from the sexual exploitation of another (Inter-Agency Standing Committee). Sexual exploitation is one of the purposes of trafficking in persons (performing in a sexual manner, forced undressing and/or nakedness, coerced marriage, forced childbearing, engagement in pornography or prostitution or sexual extortion for the granting of goods, services, assistance benefits or sexual slavery).	Anyone in a position of power, influence or control, including educators, smugglers or trafficking networks.			
Forced prostitution (also referred to as sexual exploitation)	Forced/coerced sex in exchange for material resources, services and assistance, usually targeting highly vulnerable women or girls unable to meet basic human needs for themselves and/or their children.	Any person in a privileged position, in possession of money or control of material resources and services and perceived as being powerful.			
Sexual harassment	Any unwelcome, usually repeated and unreciprocated sexual advance, unsolicited sexual attention, demand for sexual access or favours, sexual innuendo or other verbal or physical conduct of a sexual nature or display of pornographic material.	Any person in a position of power, authority, or control.			

TYPE OF ACT	DESCRIPTION/EXAMPLES	CAN BE PERPETRATED BY	
Sexual violence as a weapon of war and torture	Crimes against humanity of a sexual nature, including rape, sexual slavery, forced abortion or sterilisation or any other forms to prevent birth, forced pregnancy, forced delivery, and forced child rearing, among others. Sexual violence as a form of torture is defined as any act or threat of a sexual nature by which severe mental or physical pain or suffering is caused to obtain information, confession or punishment from the victim or third person, intimidate her or a third person or to destroy, in whole or in part, a national, ethnic, racial or religious group.	Often committed, sanctioned and ordered by military, police, armed groups or other parties in conflict.	
	PHYSICAL VIOLENCE		
Physical assault	Beating, punching, kicking, biting, burning, maiming or killing, with or without weapons. Often used in combination with other forms of sexual and gender-based violence. Spouse, intimate partner member, friend, acquain stranger, anyone in posit power or members of paconflict.		
Trafficking, slavery	Selling and/or trading in human beings for forced sexual activities, forced labour or services, slavery or practices similar to slavery, servitude or removal of organs.	Any person in a position of power or control.	
	EMOTIONAL AND PSYCHOLOGICAL VIOLENCE		
and demeaning; compelling the victim/survivor to and control; often pengage in humiliating acts, whether in public or private; by spouses, intimates		Anyone in a position of power and control; often perpetrated by spouses, intimate partners or family members in a position of authority.	
Confinement	Isolating a person from friends/family, restricting movements, deprivation of liberty or obstruction/ restriction of the right to free movement. Anyone in a position and control; often by spouses, intimate family members in authority.		

Source: UNHCR 2003

How prevalent is gender-based violence in our society and schools?

It is difficult to obtain accurate statistics on incidents of GBV in schools. While tools have been shared with schools to monitor and report on violence, they are often not used, so the data that we have may not be correct. Nevertheless, the information we do have is disturbing.

In South African schools there is widespread violence against girls. The 2012 National School Violence Study found that 4.7 per cent of learners recounted an experience of sexual assault in schools (1.6 per cent more than the 3.1 per cent recorded in 2008) and 90.9 per cent of these attacks were perpetrated by other learners. Further, it found that female learners experience far higher levels of GBV (sexual harassment, sexual assault and rape): 7.6 per cent of female learners had experienced rape compared with 1.4 per cent of male learners. In addition, one in seven girls (15.1 per cent) experienced other forms of victimisation (sexual harassment, verbal insults and bullying in particular) with 90 per cent of the perpetrators being male (Burton and Leoschut 2013). (See Background information for Workshop 2).

According to the 2011 National Youth Risk Behaviour Survey, about 7.6 per cent of learners reported having ever forced someone to have sex, with significantly more male learners (10.5 per cent) than female learners (4.8 per cent) reporting having ever forced someone to have sex (Reddy et al. 2013).

GBV occurs in various locations around schools. There are reports of the rape of girls in school toilets, empty classrooms, hallways, hostels and dormitories. Unsupervised or unmonitored toilets and latrines are noted as high-risk areas for sexual assaults on learners.

It is especially concerning that educators are implicated in many cases of GBV in schools. Solid data are scarce because cases involving educators are underreported. However, there are numerous media reports of educators harassing or assaulting learners and offering higher marks, food or money in exchange for sex. School-based surveys show that the sexual abuse of boys is also widespread and in some contexts may be more common, or at least more commonly reported, than the abuse of girls. A 2008 survey by the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention found boys were more likely than girls to experience sexual abuse at primary school (2.5 per cent vs. 0.2 per cent) but secondary school girls were very much more likely than boys to experience it (4.8 per cent vs. 1.4 per cent) (Burton 2008).

There are also disturbing indicators of attitudes to GBV. A researcher (Wilson 2001) reports that while talking to boys about incidents of violence against girls in schools some thought that incidents of sexual harassment of girls were merely teasing. A non-governmental organisation, Community Action towards a Safe Environment (CASE), making a representation at the South African Human Rights Commission's public hearings on school-based abuse (2008), described children playing games such as 'hit me, hit me' and 'rape me, rape me', in which "children run after each other. When they reach the person they want to catch, they pretend to rape them."



Why does gender-based violence occur?

GBV is easily triggered in our society and is considered to be 'normal' in many communities. Deeply learned cultural and religious practices about masculinity and femininity play a part, as we have already noted, but other factors have contributed to the situation.

South Africa has a long history of violence, dating to before the apartheid era. The legal framework introduced by the apartheid state and in place for 45 years has exacerbated the problem. Violence was sanctioned and legitimised by the state and even by some religious groups, and this led to extremely high levels of violence throughout the country. The violent repression of political opposition by the apartheid state helped to create a belief that force was effective in solving problems (Human Rights Watch 1995).

The lack of economic opportunities available to most South Africans, even post-apartheid, has driven many individuals to crime. Poverty and other socioeconomic factors such as the migrant labour system have deeply stressed and disrupted family life over a long period. Many children grow up with no kind and supportive male adult role models. Instead, they may experience absent, unstable, violent and/or often sexual male predators in their family settings.

In addition, poor communities have been hard-hit by HIV and AIDS which in many households has left children with little or no adult protection against sexual predators, making them vulnerable to all forms of GBV. Girls are particularly at risk. Transgenerational and transactional relationships (commonly referred to as 'sugar daddy' and 'sugar mommy' relationships) provide for the material needs of families and the desire young people have for consumer goods that others enjoy. While alcohol and drug abuse cannot be said to cause GBV directly, they do create conditions which promote it. Such substances make people unstable, 'hype' them up to commit offences and suppress their sense of accountability. Alcohol and drug abuse can also make girls and women more vulnerable, causing them to act without caution and miss warning signs.

Aggressive masculinity is reinforced in the media. In many advertisements, television shows and movies male violence is celebrated and women are portrayed as passive victims. Because GBV has been normalised, many victims or potential victims accept it as inevitable and even accept and internalise insulting names such as 'slut' or 'izitabane'.

All these factors, combined with a lack of or limited resources in our safety, security, justice and welfare sectors, have created a society in which most children are not safe from GBV, including sexual abuse. If they do not experience GBV in their homes and communities, they are very likely to experience it in schools.

Why should schools take action against gender-based violence?

Much of the GBV described above takes place during the hours children spend in school and the consequences are felt in schools too. Here are some of the issues that schools need to confront:

 GBV goes directly against the constitutional rights of every child to basic education and to a school environment that is not harmful to their wellbeing, freedom, security, dignity and equality. GBV at home, at school and on the way to and from school seriously threatens the education of many learners, especially girls, but also boys. It affects both physical and psychological wellbeing and thus impacts negatively on performance and attendance, and leads to increased drop-out rates.

The persistence of GBV in schools means that schools need to hold themselves accountable for the infringement of various constitutional rights, such as the right to be protected from abuse and degradation (section 28) and the right to freedom and security, dignity, privacy and equality, and bodily and psychological integrity (section 12). In addition, the state may not unfairly discriminate directly or indirectly against anyone on one or more grounds, including gender, sex, pregnancy and sexual orientation, amongst others (section 9).

- · GBV is a major issue in our schools and it is under-reported. The range of offences in schools, and how they interact, needs to be better understood. Some school-based offences that are taken for granted as 'normal' or harmless practice (e.g. certain graffiti in school toilets) are abusive because they express and promote sexually abusive attitudes and contribute to creating a climate for more extreme offences.
 - Incidents of sexual violence and hate crimes in South African schools are greatly under-reported. When less extreme harassment is condoned, it can (and does) lead to more extreme forms of violence such as rape and physical and sexual assault. Therefore, knowing how to identify and respond to bullying/harassment in schools will help to prevent some of the general violence that plagues our society.
- Sexual violation and unequal gender relations increase the spread of HIV infection. Unequal gender relations make it difficult for women and girls to negotiate sex and safe sex because men and boys control the sexual decisionmaking. Young girls are forced or pressured to have sex and are physically much more susceptible to HIV infection than boys. Educators who have sexual relationships with learners are increasing those learners' risk of HIV infection.
- GBV erodes social cohesion. Social cohesion refers to our ability to use our resources to work together so that we function satisfactorily and develop as individuals and as a society. Poor gender relations and GBV degrade human potential and relationships. This leads to a loss of self-esteem, failure to fulfil ambitions, school drop-outs, unwanted pregnancies, substance abuse and loss of educational opportunities. These in turn result in unemployment or under-employment, further substance abuse, child neglect, new cycles of GBV and abuse, and an ongoing lack of capacity for community involvement and development.

What does the law say about gender-based violence?

NAME OF THE ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
South African Schools Act, section 8	1996	 The Act provides that: The governing body of a public school must adopt a code of conduct for the learners after consultation with the learners, parents and educators of the school. The code of conduct referred to must be aimed at establishing a disciplined and purposeful school environment, dedicated to the improvement and maintenance of the quality of the learning process. Nothing exempts a learner from the obligation to comply with the code of conduct of the school attended by the learner. A code of conduct must contain provisions of due process, safeguarding the interests of the learner and any other party involved in disciplinary proceedings. The code of conduct must also provide for support measures or structures for counselling a learner involved in disciplinary proceedings.
Domestic Violence Act, 116 of 1998	1998	A domestic relationship is a relationship where the complainant and the respondent are: • Married, divorced or separated couples • Couples living together (including homosexual couples) • Parents of a child • Family members (including the extended family) • People who are engaged to or dating one another • Children • People who share a living space.
		 Domestic abuse is: Physical abuse – pushing, slapping, punching, kicking, burning, biting or stabbing. Emotional, verbal and psychological abuse – name-calling, yelling and belittling the victim, threatening to kill the victim, self or others, isolating the victim. Sexual abuse – any conduct that abuses, humiliates, degrades or otherwise violates the sexual integrity of the complainant. Economic abuse – taking the victim's money, refusing to provide money for household expenses, not paying maintenance. Forced entry – making uninvited calls or visits, refusing to leave. Stalking – following, constant phoning, waiting outside the victim's workplace or home. Damaging property – tearing clothes, destroying belongings. Abusing children – verbal, physical and sexual abuse of children. Any other behaviour which is controlling and abusive.
		What is a protection order?
		A form of legal injunction that requires a party to do or to refrain from doing certain acts, e.g. to stop abusing or contacting the complainant or being made to leave a shared residence.
		An application for a protection order may be brought on behalf of a complainant by any other person, including a counsellor, health service provider, member of the South African Police Service, social worker or teacher, who has a material interest in the well-being of the complainant.
		There must be a written consent of the complainant, except in circumstances where the complainant is (1) a minor, (2) mentally retarded, (3) unconscious or (4) a person whom the court is satisfied is unable to give the required consent.
		A minor may apply for a protection order without the assistance of a parent, guardian or any other person.

NAME OF THE ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
The Employment of	2000	Provides for educator dismissal in cases of:
Educators Amendment Act		 Serious misconduct if he/she is found guilty of: Committing an act of sexual assault on a learner, student or other employee; Having a sexual relationship with a learner of the school where he/she is employed; Seriously assaulting, with the intention to cause grievous bodily harm to, a learner, student or other employee.
		 Misconduct if he/she: Unfairly discriminates against other persons on the basis of race, gender, disability, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic and social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language, birth, family responsibility, HIV status, political opinion or other grounds prohibited by the Constitution.
South African Council	2000	Provides for deregistration of educators.
for Educators Act The Code of Conduct for Educators (SACE)	2007	When an educator is dismissed on the basis of sexually abusing a learner, he/she is also deregistered as an educator and cannot be appointed again by any education provider.
		An educator must: Refrain from improper physical contact with learners Refrain from any sort of sexual harassment (physical or otherwise) of learners Refrain from any sort of sexual relationship with learners at a school.
Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act	2007	 A child is a person who is: Under the age of 18, or With reference to sections 15 and 16, a person 12 years or older but under the age of 16 years.
		Sexual act means an act of sexual penetration or an act of sexual violation.
		Acts of consensual sexual penetration with certain children (<i>statutory rape</i>): • A person who commits an act of sexual penetration with a child, despite the consent of the child, is guilty of an act of sexual penetration with the child.
		 Acts of consensual sexual violation with certain children (statutory sexual assault): A person who commits an act of sexual violation with a child is, despite the consent of the child, guilty of the offence of having committed an act of sexual violation with a child.
		RapeIntentionally and unlawfully committing an act of sexual penetration with a complainant without her or his consent.
		 Intention Purposefully and intentionally and aware of what he/she was doing. Foresaw the possibility that he/she was having intercourse with the complainant without his/her consent.

NAME OF THE ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
Sexual Offences Amendment Act (cont.)	2007	 Sexual penetration Any act which causes penetration to any extent whatsoever by: The genital organs of one person into or beyond the genital organs, anus or mouth of another person; Any other part of the body of one person or, any object, including any part of the body of an animal, into or beyond the genital organs or anus of another person; and The genital organs of an animal into or beyond the mouth of another person. Age of consent 0 to under 11 years cannot consent. 12 years to 15 years may consent to one whose age is not more than two years older than than of the consenting party.
		 Statutory rape (consensual sexual penetration with a child) 16 years is the age of consent. There is an obligation to report commission of sexual offences against children or persons who are mentally disabled. A person who has knowledge that a sexual offence has been committed against a child must report such knowledge immediately to a police official. A person who fails to report such knowledge is guilty of an offence and is liable on conviction to a fine or imprisonment for a period not exceeding five years, or to both a fine and such imprisonment.

What can schools and educators do to counter gender-based violence?

Just as GBV is learned behaviour, so is behaviour based on values of respect and equality. Schools are key resources in communities. They are ideally placed to encourage and develop positive and constructive behaviours and relationships amongst young people, and to discourage abusive behaviour and unhealthy relationships. Schools therefore have a strong mandate to deal with GBV.

At one level, schools and educators need to develop clear-cut, committed and compassionate processes for dealing with incidents of GBV. For example:

- Reporting incidents/cases to the principal/school support team, school safety team/the South African Police Service and following through processes properly (see the National School Safety Framework which can be obtained from the provincial and district Department of Basic Education offices).
- · Ensuring that incidents are handled confidentially.
- · Giving emotional support to abused learners.
- Getting counselling and other support for abused learners by developing a network: health and social services, the South African Police Service, community-based organisations, churches, non-governmental organisations, etc.
- Helping learners to obtain protection orders (in the case of domestic violence/ harassment).
- Helping learners who have been raped to obtain post-exposure prophylaxis, be tested for HIV and, if necessary, get treatment.
- · Reporting colleagues who abuse learners.

At another level, schools and educators need to put 'whole-school' structures, policies and procedures in place around school discipline and school safety. For

example, establishing school support and school safety teams; developing school and classroom codes of conduct; and setting up regular auditing and monitoring of potential GBV hotspots such as toilets, empty classrooms and playing fields.

In addition, work is needed in investigating and transforming the school and classroom culture and ethos.

The following are questions that should be asked by educators:

- What are gender relations like at your school?
- How could gender relations at your school be improved?
- · How can you ensure that girl learners
 - · develop strong self-esteem and confidence?
 - learn to set goals, make choices and control their own lives?
 - learn to assert their own needs and wants and negotiate (for example) sexual situations and safe sex?

Furthermore, how can you ensure that boys and girls develop healthy, friendly relationships rather than highly sexualised and often hostile encounters? Educators can work to help learners understand the attitudes and structures that promote GBV and the ways in which their behaviour contributes to the problem. They can encourage peer structures such as Girls' and Boys' Education Movement clubs that build positive support relationships within and across gender lines. They can develop positive, gender-equal classroom discipline and take extra care to involve girls and withdrawn or shy learners in classroom interaction.

This manual is designed to help schools and educators take up the challenge. The eight workshops in this manual respond to these needs and can be used with all members of the school community.

FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR WorkShop 1

WORKSHOP LENGTH: 3 HOURS 40 MINUTES

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- Provide an understanding of violence in South Africa as well as strategies for ending it.
- · Explain key concepts of gender.
- Sensitise participants on how gender is socially constructed.
- Understand the nature of GBV, including the types of GBV prevalent in schools.
- · Provide high level information on the legislative framework on GBV.
- · Provide strategies for dealing with GBV in schools.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- Identify some of the triggers of violence in South Africa.
- Define what gender is, including key gender concepts and how they perpetuate GBV.
- Describe social construction of gender and the key socialisation institutions, agents and processes.
- Define gender-based violence, including various forms of GBV.
- · Define key provisions of the GBV legislation.
- · Identify suitable strategies to address GBV in schools.

OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- Topic 1. What is violence? (50 minutes)
- Topic 2. What is gender? (30 minutes)
- Topic 3. What is GBV? (60 minutes)
- Topic 4. Laws that seek to address GBV in South Africa (40 minutes)
- Topic 5. What can schools and educators do to address GBV? (30 minutes)

MATERIALS

- · Coloured cards/coloured stickers
- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- · PowerPoint presentations

WORKSHOP 1 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 1B **SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 1A**

HANDOUT 2 **SEX AND GENDER**

HANDOUT 3 **IS THIS GBV?**

HANDOUT 4 LAWS THAT SEEK TO ADDRESS GBV IN SOUTH AFRICA

HANDOUT 5 TAKING ACTION AGAINST GBV IN SCHOOLS





GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 1

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



Considering values. If there is extra time, participants can do the 'considering values' task (see page 8) before starting Workshop 1 tasks. However, make a clear distinction between the value consideration task and the workshop tasks. Ideally, arrange for the task to be done in advance during a separate meeting.

Background information. Read this section because it contains information you may need for giving input during the sessions and supporting participants.

The *Background information* section is longer for Workshop 1 because it is the foundation workshop of the programme and it will ensure that you have enough information to ground your participants in GBV issues.

Scope, style and timing of the workshop. GBV is an extensive topic: it is not possible to address every issue and nuance in just one workshop. Workshop 1 focuses particularly on GBV as it affects schools and learners. Therefore, try to engage and involve participants in the key focus areas.

In addition, this workshop deals with the relevant issues quite broadly. There is an opportunity to explore different forms and aspects of GBV more comprehensively in subsequent workshops.

Because it is a fairly comprehensive workshop, you may want to divide it into two sections and facilitate each section at separate meetings.

Dealing with sensitive issues. This workshop addresses extremely sensitive content and your approach should reflect this (see *Guidelines for facilitating activities focused on sensitive topics*, page 6).

LENGTH:



INTRODUCTION

Give an overview of the workshop and its objectives, and do an icebreaker activity that will enable participants to introduce themselves and get to know each other and the facilitator.

TOPIC 1. WHAT IS VIOLENCE?

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Markers
- · PowerPoint presentation
- Handout 1A. What do we know about violence?
- · Handout 1B. Suggested responses to Handout 1A

Task 1. What do we know about violence?

Small group discussion. Organise groups of four and distribute Handout 1A. Groups should respond *Agree* or *Disagree* to each statement and give reasons for their answers.

Report back in small groups and whole group. Ask participants to compare their responses with the answers on Handout 1B and with other groups. Allow comments, questions and answers. Summarise key issues, insights and 'rethinks' that have arisen in discussion.

Task 2. Defining violence

Brainstorm in groups. Ask groups to brainstorm a definition of violence (2 or 3 minutes). Encourage participants to draw on insights from Task 1.

Whole group report back. Write the definitions on the flipchart, reflecting all contributions without repetition. Discuss the following questions with the whole group and write up responses on the flipchart.

- · What are the common features across the definitions?
- What broad types of violence can you identify? (If participants offer examples
 of physical violence only, ask whether threats, stalking, insults, withholding food,
 etc. aren't also examples of violence.)
- · What kinds of violence occur in our schools?
- How does violence affect people, society and schools?

Facilitator input/PowerPoint presentation. Revise and finalise a single definition on the flipchart. Summarise by giving a brief PowerPoint presentation/oral presentation on the nature, types and effects of violence in society generally and in schools. Base this presentation on the World Health Organization definition and information in *Background information*, pages 16 and 17.



LENGTH:



Suggested answers to Handout 2

5. S

2. G	7. G
3. G	8. G
4. G	9. G

10. S

1. S 6. S

TOPIC 2. WHAT IS GENDER?

MATERIALS

- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- · PowerPoint presentation
- Handout 2. Sex and gender

Task 1. Sex and gender

Small group discussion. Organise groups of 3 or 4, distribute Handout 2 and set the task. Ask participants to give reasons for their answer in each case.

Report back. During the group report back, summarise discussion on each statement to emphasise the difference between sex and gender, and outline the nature of gendered roles.

Task 2. How gender is constructed in society?

Think individually. Tell participants they have a few minutes to think about their responses to the following questions:

- What 'messages' did you get as a young child about qualities and behaviours that people expected of you as a boy/girl?
- · Who gave you these messages?
- Which messages did you find positive/helpful? Which messages were negative/a problem for you? Give reasons.

In pairs. Participants can spend five minutes sharing their responses with a partner. Remind them to listen very carefully to each other's responses.

In small groups and whole group. Ask pairs to join up with another pair to form small groups. Participants must take turns sharing with the group what his/her partner said. Then discuss the following questions with the whole group:

- Have you given (or would you give) your sons and daughters the same messages about gender roles you received as a young person? What has/ hasn't changed in these messages?
- How have the messages you are giving your sons and daughters changed/not changed since you were younger?
- Why are the messages our sons and daughters are receiving changing? or
- What is preventing changes to these messages?

Report back and facilitator input. Comment on group findings. Point out how gendered identities and roles are established at home during early childhood and then usually reinforced in schools. Ensure that participants discuss how this creates issues of status, power and control between men and women, girls and boys. (See *Background information*, page 17.)

TOPIC 3. WHAT IS GBV?

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Markers
- · PowerPoint presentation
- · 'Problem tree' diagram on flipchart
- Prestik®
- Sticker-squares or discs of coloured paper (two colours; at least one sticker per participant)
- Handout 3. Is this GBV?

Task 1. Defining GBV

Brainstorm. Organise same-sex groups. Ask participants to discuss and identify:

- · the main characteristics of GBV
- a few examples to illustrate these characteristics
- · targets/victims of GBV
- the perpetrators of GBV.

Emphasise that they should apply the understanding they have already developed about violence and gender. The task should go quite briskly after the brainstorming

Report back. Lead the report-back and finalise a definition (see below) with participants.

Suggested responses

See Background information (pages 19 and 20). Another definition is:

GBV is any form of violence directed against women, girls, boys and men on the basis of socially attributed differences between males and females (United Nations 1993).

Also remind participants that GBV has the key features of all and any forms of violence, namely:

- It is intentional, i.e. it is inflicted deliberately
- It involves force and/or threat direct physical force, or the force of power/control
- It seeks to 'bring down' its target to overpower, kill, harm and/or humiliate them.

LENGTH:





Task 2. Identifying GBV in schools

Group discussions. Distribute Handout 3 and ask participants to note the key features of GBV and violence (see Task 1). Record these on a flipchart. Groups need 15–20 minutes to complete Sections A (GBV mini-scenarios) and B (questions about prevalence) on the handout. Emphasise to participants that this task is about *their* definition and understanding of violence and GBV rather than the laws that apply; they will have an opportunity later in this workshop to look at the legal aspects.

Report back

Section A. Help participants to rethink issues and apply criteria for GBV and violence generally. Remind them of relevant points around violence (Topic 1). Keep the focus on attitudes and values rather than legal definitions/provisions. However, acknowledge any uncertainty/conflict that arises over scenarios such as miniscenario 8 (i.e. Ben and Thoko, where there is underage, technically illegal and irresponsible sex rather than power-related GBV) and note that they will look at legal aspects in the next topic.

Section B. It is essential for participants to refer to GBV experiences and prevalence at their own schools, as well as the given mini-scenarios. Every context has its own issues. If necessary, adapt the task to engage more fully with these realities; later workshops will deal with some issues in more detail.

You could do a brief PowerPoint or oral presentation on prevalence nationally. (See *Background information*, page 21 for statistics.)

Task 3. Causes and consequences of GBV

Facilitator and whole group. Draw a tree trunk with wide branches and roots on a flipchart (i.e. the GBV 'problem tree'). Label the tree trunk: 'GBV'.

Individual participants need sticker-squares or discs of coloured paper (provide Prestik® if necessary): one colour for causes of GBV (the roots) and another colour for consequences of GBV (the leaves/fruit on the branches). They should write their response (one cause or consequence, depending on the colour they have been given) on the sticker in clear large script and stick it on the GBV 'problem tree'.

Tips for the facilitator

- Remind participants of ideas and information already shared in earlier activities (e.g. the GBV scenarios can help them to think concretely about causes and consequences).
- Responses should reflect the situation in their own school communities.
- Responses can focus on causes and consequences both at personal/family level and at a broader level (school, community and national).

Discussion. Lead the discussion by looking at the responses on the stickers, eliciting more responses if necessary. (For some supporting ideas see *Background information*, page 22.)

TOPIC 4. GBV AND THE LAW

MATERIALS

- · Flipchart paper
- Markers
- PowerPoint presentation
- Handout 3. Is this GBV?
- Handout 4. Laws relating to GBV against learners

Task. Matching GBV scenarios with the laws that apply

Pair work. Distribute Handout 4. Explain that the current epidemic of violence and GBV against children prevails despite detailed and extensive legislation that is in place to protect their rights. Read through the legislation with participants and ensure that the terms are understood.

Pair work. Also refer participants to Handout 3 and ask them to match each miniscenario to a legal provision listed in Handout 4.

Note: There might be more than one provision that applies to a case.

Report back. Encourage comments and questions from the whole group. Be sure to refer participants to scenario 8 (Ben and Thoko: the Sexual Offences Act criminalises their behaviour but the issue has been put on hold so prosecution cannot take place).

LENGTH:





If time is short, do the task 'jigsaw' style: share out the mini-scenarios so that each group has to match only one or two scenarios to the relevant legal provisions.





LENGTH:



TOPIC 5. WHAT CAN SCHOOLS AND EDUCATORS DO TO ADDRESS GBV?

MATERIALS

- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- Handout 3. Is this GBV?
- Handout 4. Laws relating to GBV against learners
- Handout 5. Taking action against GBV in schools

Task. Sharing ideas for action

Brainstorm. Do this task either in small groups or in 'jigsaw' style, depending on available time. Distribute Handout 5 which focuses on learner Maria (case study 6 from Handout 3). Participants should brainstorm general ideas in response to the five questions in the handout and record them on the handout. Alternatively, use the same questions to examine what action to take in any of the scenarios from Handout 3, or any other GBV incidents which may have occurred at their own schools.

Report back. In summary, emphasise the different types and levels of action in response to GBV cases, preventing GBV, equalising gender relations in schools and encouraging and empowering girls. The variety of questions in Handout 5 highlights the complexities of dealing with GBV. Explain that these complexities will be explored in more detail in future workshops. (Also refer to *Background information*, pages 26 and 27, for additional support.)

SUGGESTED FOLLOW-UP ACTIVITIES

- 1. Arrange a discussion or a quiz with colleagues and/or learners based on the information in Handout 4. This information can be a prevention tool and also help you to promote more determined action in response to incidents of GBV at school. It will be most effectively used if you have a functioning school safety committee (see below).
- 2. Introduce learners in your classes to the handbook Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse. Link it to life orientation lessons or get permission to hold workshops (see the suggestion for a Violence Awareness Day below).
- 3. Create a bulletin board with the heading: 'What one learner can do to end violence'. Learners write what they can do to end violence under a photo or drawing of themselves.
- 4. Organise a Violence Awareness Day at your school. Learners can participate in educational workshops that address the various forms of violence, and develop plays, songs and artwork designed to raise awareness about violence.
- 5. Form a school safety committee at your school which includes educators, learners and parents who can discuss ways to address school violence and help school management develop a school safety plan. Such a committee can develop guidelines for dealing with violent incidents and suggest strategies for educating the school community. It can help to develop safety support networks across the broad school community and coordinate more effective responses to specific incidents of GBV, so that individual educators are not overburdened when an incident arises. (Refer to the National School Safety Framework to help you develop a whole-school response to school safety issues.)



WorkShop 1 HANDOUTS

HANDOUT 1A. WHAT DO WE KNOW ABOUT VIOLENCE?



Decide if you agree or disagree with each statement.

Tick the appropriate column. Write reasons for each response in the space provided.

STATEMENTS	AGREE	DISAGREE	REASONS FOR YOUR RESPONSE
It's natural for boys to be more aggressive than girls.			
It's easy for women to get out of abusive relationships if they really want to.			
3. Men who beat women are mentally ill.			
4. Children should always do what adults tell them.			
5. GBV is nearly always perpetrated by men or boys towards women or girls.			
6. Educators can be targets of GBV in schools.			
7. Young children are too immature to engage in GBV.			
Poverty is the main cause of GBV which occurs very little amongst higher-income groups.			
Drinking and using drugs can contribute to GBV.			
10. One reason for the under-reporting of GBV in schools is that many learners and educators do not recognise it as abuse.			
11. If some cultures tolerate violence, there is little educators can do to change attitudes.			
12. Teenagers who consent to sex with an adult are not experiencing GBV or being abused.			

HANDOUT 1B. SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 1A

1. It's natural for boys to be more aggressive than girls.

Disagree

Violence is a learned behaviour. In societies where there is high male-on-female violence, aggression and hostility towards women tend to be viewed as part of being masculine. Boys learn their masculine roles early. Educators often experience boys practising their domination by hitting girls.

2. It's easy for women to get out of abusive relationships if they really want to.

Disagree

It is often traumatic for women to end an abusive relationship. Many women do not have the economic resources to support themselves and their children. Some women fear they will be ostracised by their families and communities if they end their relationship. Women are often blamed for their abuse and believe it will stop if they change their behaviour. In many cases, women worry that the violence they are experiencing will increase if they try to leave.

3. Men who beat women are mentally ill.

Disagree

The problem of violence against women is too widespread to be a product of mental illness. The indifference (lack of attention/care) of the police and judicial authorities to incidents of men's abuse against women contributes to the problem, because men are not held accountable for their behaviour.

4. Children should always do what adults tell them.

Disagree

Children need to learn what appropriate behaviour is for adults. Children should know they have the right not to be abused by anyone, including adults who have authority over them. Children should be encouraged to trust their own 'gut feelings'.

5. GBV is nearly always perpetrated by men or boys towards women or girls.

Disagree

Women and girls are most often targeted for sexual violence. Sexual violence is in most instances perpetuated by men and boys. Male-on-male 'gay bashing' is also GBV and is very common in schools. Boys are more likely than girls to be the targets of homophobic (anti-homosexual) harassment/bullying. In general, boys are put down by being compared to members of marginalised groups, particularly women and homosexual men. Many boys act as aggressively 'masculine' to avoid being harassed themselves. Studies also show a high rate of GBV of boys, especially in primary schools, and GBV is also perpetrated by female educators on male learners. Both boys and girls harass (bully) homosexual schoolmates.

6. Educators can be targets of GBV in schools.

Agree

Educators, especially young women, do get sexually harassed or even assaulted by other educators and by learners. Educators have reported an increase in learner-educator violence due to increased availability of alcohol and drugs.

7. Young children are too immature to engage in GBV.

Disagree

The bullying behaviour of young children can lead to GBV. Bullying becomes GBV when learners are hassled because they are a girl or a boy. It is not uncommon for learners in the primary grades to suffer gendered put-downs and physical touching by their peers.



1 HANDOUTS

8. Poverty is the main cause of GBV which occurs very little amongst higher-income groups.

Disagree

GBV occurs widely across the population, regardless of income, race, religion, etc., reflecting gendered values and attitudes. However, while poverty (together with unemployment and poor living conditions) cannot be taken as a direct cause of GBV, poor conditions do favour sexual exploitation. For example, an abuser may offer money and/or other incentives in exchange for sex, either directly to a child, or through an adult caregiver who may openly accept/support the arrangement or turn a blind eye. People are often reluctant to report abuse when the abuser is giving financial support to a household. In addition, poverty brings stresses that raise the level of anger and thus violence and abuse in learners' homes.

9. Drinking and using drugs can contribute to GBV.

Agree

It is true that alcohol and other drugs affect behaviour. If a person has difficulty controlling anger, alcohol and drugs can aggravate the problem. They can also make girls or boys who are targets of abuse less alert to the danger signs. But alcohol and drugs are not the direct cause of violence and should never be used as an excuse for abusive behaviour.

10. GBV is under-reported in schools partly because many learners and educators do not see it as abuse.

Agree

Violence in relationships has become so widespread that many men and women accept forced and violent sex as normal. Various studies among adults and high school learners reveal a very common view that forcing someone you know to have sex with you is not considered to be sexual violence. Some educators support homophobic (anti-homosexual) bullying, while many ignore it for various reasons such as: they feel ill-equipped to deal with it; they don't consider it to be a school matter; they disapprove of homosexuality for religious reasons; or they fear parents objecting to acceptance of homosexual identities at school.

11. Teenagers who consent to sex with an adult are not experiencing GBV.

Disagree

Adults often persuade or encourage willing teenagers to have sex with them and sometimes accept sexual invitations from a teenager. While this may seem like consensual sex, teenagers are too immature to be in responsible control of such decisions. Those living in poverty are frequently driven by material needs and wants. Therefore, the adult is exploiting and abusing them. According to South African law, it is illegal for adults to have consensual sex with children of 12–16 years and children under 12 years are taken as being incapable of having consensual sex.

12. If some cultures tolerate violence, there is little educators can do to change attitudes.

Disagree

While cultural attitudes towards women may be relevant in some forms of violence, it is stereotyping to label all members of a particular cultural group as holding the same viewpoint. People within cultures have a variety of perspectives and culture changes constantly. Also, although we should respect cultural differences, they cannot be used as an excuse for abusive behaviour. This is the message that educators need to convey.

Educators have the opportunity to change learners' attitudes before they are firmly fixed. Therefore, violence-prevention education programmes in schools may be our best bet for eliminating violence in the larger society.

HANDOUT 2. SEX AND GENDER

Read each statement and decide if it is about Sex (S) or Gender (G). Write S or G in the column.

	s	G
Most women have stopped menstruating by the age of 50.		
2. Men are the strong, silent ones whereas women talk a lot.		
3. Men are supposed to be the heads of households.		
4. Young boys are usually naughtier than girls.		
5. About one-third of boys experience some breast tissue growth during puberty.		
6. Women can become pregnant; men can impregnate.		
7. Childcare is the responsibility of women; men should be concerned with other work.		
8. Women do the majority of agricultural work in African countries.		
9. Women usually are paid less than men for the same work.		
10. Women can breast-feed babies; men can bottle-feed babies.		







HANDOUT 3. IS THIS GBV?



Section A. Mini-scenarios

Read each mini-scenario below and in groups decide (Yes or No) whether or not it is an example of GBV. Use your understanding of the nature of violence and of GBV and how it affects people and give reasons for each response.

		YES	NO
1.	Thembisa (13) is very upset because a boy in her class is always touching her, sometimes even on her breasts or bum. It happens at break time and also in class. When she asks him not to do it, he just laughs at her and does it again.		
2.	Dodo (15, Grade 9) is scared of getting pregnant because her boyfriend Sello (17) uses no protection when they have sex. When Dodo mentions this to Sello, he gets furious and forces her to have sex. She is traumatised and afraid of what he might do to her if she breaks up with him.		
3.	Joseph (10) has been pushing other kids around in the playground. When his teacher takes him to one side to tell him off, Joseph breaks down and tells her that his mother's boyfriend has lost his job. He is getting drunk and beating up Joseph's mother every weekend. Last time she fell and broke her arm and when Joseph ran to help her, he also punched Joseph hard.		
4.	Thamisanqua (11) used to admire uncle Solly (24) who lives with Thami's family and often takes him to soccer matches. But now Solly has started taking Thami into the bush near their house after watching soccer, making him undress and masturbating in front of him. Thami is disturbed and frightened.		
5.	A handsome taxi driver who is new in the area appears at the pick-up point for learners outside the school. He chats very attentively with Lerato (14, Grade 8). She tells her friends that he has an amazing life and knows where to hear the best music in the city. One day she doesn't arrive home after school, and she doesn't return to school the next day either. After two days, no one has seen or heard anything from Lerato.		
6.	Maria (15) is in love with her married teacher and has fallen pregnant. He has kept the affair secret. He won't help her now, although at the beginning he gave her money and a cellphone, bought groceries for her parents and changed her marks so she passed his subject. She wants to leave school because he is there and she also fears the stigma.		
7.	A group of boys lean against the wall in the school corridor or stand by the road shouting comments about the bodies of girls who walk past or yelling sex invitations. Sometimes they closely follow the girls and whisper loudly what they want to do.		
8.	Ben and Thoko (both 15) have been boyfriend and girlfriend for two years. They just kissed and cuddled for a long time but recently they have started having sex. Ben's sister has found out and told them that they could easily go to jail for this.		
9.	David is regularly mocked and trailed at school in the corridors and during break by other kids who copy and exaggerate his walk and way of speaking and call him 'izitabane' or 'moffie'. A few boys corner him and tell him that they are going to 'get' him one of these days if he dares to come anywhere near them.		

Section B. Questions

- 1. Are any of these scenarios common/prevalent in your own school and community? If so, which? How common are they?
- 2. What other kinds of GBV also occur? Outline the incidents and explain why you would describe them as GBV.

HANDOUT 4. LAWS THAT SEEK TO ADDRESS GBV IN SOUTH AFRICA

NAME OF ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
South African Schools Act, section 8	1996	 The Act provides that: The governing body of a public school must adopt a code of conduct for the learners after consultation with the learners, parents and educators of the school. The code of conduct referred to must be aimed at establishing a disciplined and purposeful school environment, dedicated to the improvement and maintenance of the quality of the learning process. Nothing exempts a learner from the obligation to comply with the code of conduct of the school attended by the learner. A code of conduct must contain provisions of due process, safeguarding the interests of the learner and any other party involved in disciplinary proceedings. The code of conduct must also provide for support measures or structures for counselling a learner involved in disciplinary proceedings.
Domestic Violence Act, 116 of 1998	1998	A domestic relationship is a relationship where the complainant and the respondent are: • Married, divorced or separated couples • Couples living together (including homosexual couples) • Parents of a child • Family members (including the extended family) • People who are engaged or dating one another • Children • People who share a living space.
		 Domestic abuse is: Physical abuse – pushing, slapping, punching, kicking, burning, biting or stabbing. Emotional, verbal and psychological abuse – name-calling, yelling and belittling the victim, threatening to kill the victim, self or others, isolating the victim. Sexual abuse – any conduct that abuses, humiliates, degrades or otherwise violates the sexual integrity of the complainant. Economic abuse – taking the victim's money, refusing to provide money for household expenses, not paying maintenance. Forced entry – making uninvited calls or visits, refusing to leave. Stalking – following, constant phoning, waiting outside the victim's workplace or home. Damaging property – tearing clothes, destroying belongings. Abusing children – verbal, physical and sexual abuse of children.

· Any other behaviour which is controlling and abusive.

What is a protection order?

A form of legal injunction that requires a party to do or to refrain from doing certain acts, e.g. to stop abusing or contacting the complainant or being made to leave a shared residence.

An application for a protection order may be brought on behalf of a complainant by any other person, including a counsellor, health service provider, member of the South African Police Service, social worker or teacher, who has a material interest in the well-being of the complainant.

There must be a written consent of the complainant, except in circumstances where the complainant is (1) a minor, (2) mentally retarded, (3) unconscious or (4) a person whom the court is satisfied is unable to give the required consent.

A minor may apply for a protection order without the assistance of a parent, guardian or any other person.

1 HANDOUTS

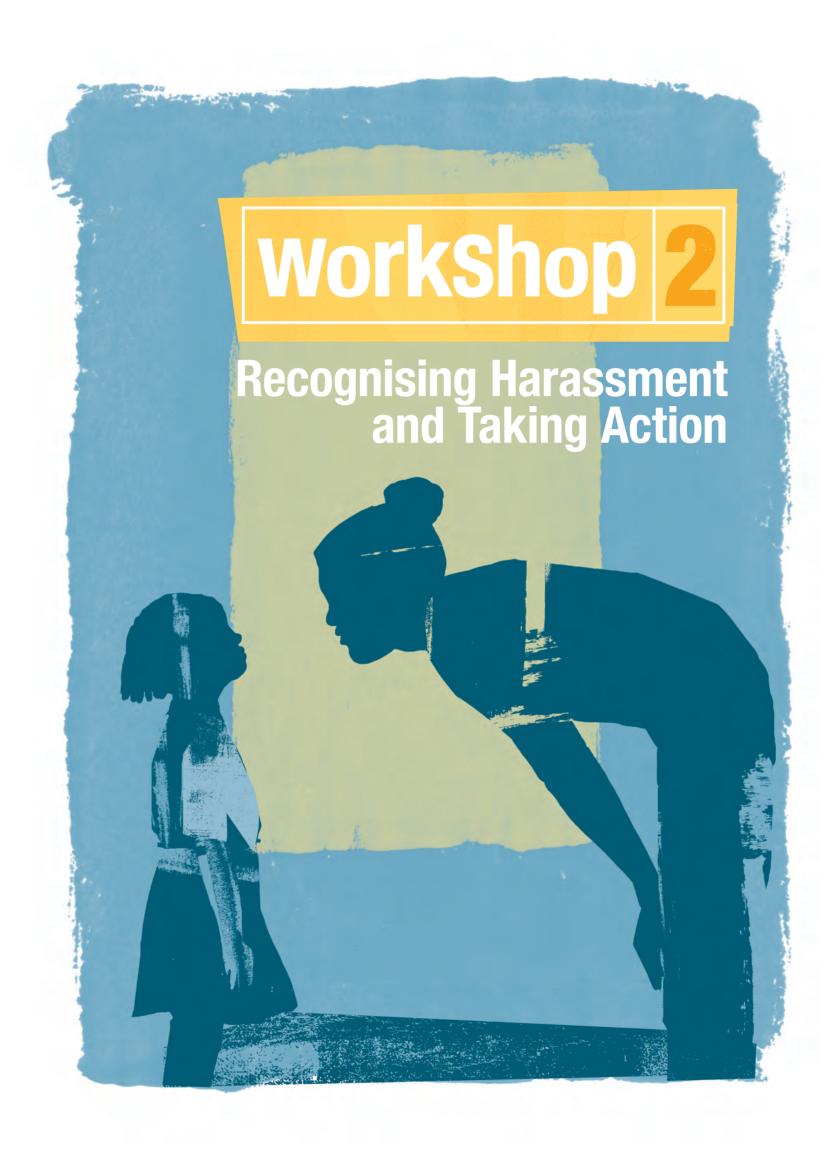
NAME OF ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
The Employment of Educators Amendment Act	2000	Provides for educator dismissal in cases of: Serious misconduct if he/she is found guilty of: Committing an act of sexual assault on a learner, student or other employee; Having a sexual relationship with a learner of the school where he/she is employed; Seriously assaulting, with the intention to cause grievous bodily harm to, a learner, student or other employee. Misconduct if he/she: Unfairly discriminates against other persons on the basis of race, gender, disability, sex, pregnancy, marital status, ethnic and social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, religion, conscience, belief, culture, language, birth, family responsibility, HIV status, political opinion or other grounds prohibited by the Constitution.
South African Council for Educators Act The Code of Conduct for Educators (SACE)	2000	Provides for deregistration of educators. When an educator is dismissed on the basis of sexually abusing a learner, he/she is also deregistered as an educator and cannot be appointed again by any education provider. An educator must: Refrain from improper physical contact with learners Refrain from any sort of sexual harassment (physical or otherwise) of learners
Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act	2007	 Refrain from any sort of sexual relationship with learners at a school. A child is a person who is: Under the age of 18, or With reference to sections 15 and 16, a person 12 years or older but under the age of 16 years. Sexual act means an act of sexual penetration or an act of sexual violation. Acts of consensual sexual penetration with certain children (statutory rape): A person who commits an act of sexual penetration with a child, despite the consent of the child, is guilty of an act of sexual penetration with a child is, despite the consent of the child, guilty of the offence of having committed an act of sexual violation with a child is, despite the consent of the child, guilty of the offence of having committed an act of sexual violation with a child. Rape Intentionally and unlawfully committing an act of sexual penetration with a complainant without her or his consent. Intention Purposefully and intentionally and aware of what he/she was doing. Foresaw the possibility that he/she was having intercourse with the complainant without his/her consent. Sexual penetration Any act which causes penetration to any extent whatsoever by: The genital organs of one person into or beyond the genital organs, anus or mouth of another person; Any other part of the body of one person or, any object, including any part of the body of an animal, into or beyond the genital organs or anus of another person; and The genital organs of an animal into or beyond the mouth of another person; Age of consent O to under 11 years cannot consent. 12 years to 15 years may consent to one whose age is not more than two years older than than of the consenting party. Statutory rape (consensual sexual penetration with a child) 16 years is the age of consent. There is an obligation to report

HANDOUT 5. TAKING ACTION AGAINST GBV IN SCHOOLS

Maria is in love with her married teacher and has fallen pregnant. He has kept the affair secret. He won't help her now, although at the beginning he gave her money and a cellphone, bought groceries for her parents and changed her marks so she passed his subject. She wants to leave school because he is there and she also fears the stigma. Imagine Maria is a learner at the same school you teach at. She shares her story with you.

1. What would you say to the learner?				
2. What action must be taken on behalf of the learner?				
3. Who else needs to be involved in dealing with this situation (i.e. multi-stakeholder/support networks)?				
4. As a teacher, how can you prevent further cases/situations like this?				
5. What prevention measures need to be in place at school management/governance level?				





2 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

NOTE:



Before conducting Workshop 2, facilitators must read *Background information* in Workshop 1 on gender-based violence (GBV) (pages 19 to 27).

What is harassment?

It is widely believed that sexual harassment is the only type of harassment that occurs. In reality, while sexual harassment is perhaps the most common form of harassing behaviour, it is not the only one.

According to the Protection from Harassment Act, 17 of 2011, harassment is

unreasonably following, watching, pursuing or accosting (approaching or addressing someone else aggressively) a person (or related person) or loitering outside of or near a building or place where a person (or related person) resides, works, carries on business, studies or happens to be.

The Act applies to everyone and can be used by anyone to seek legal redress against harassment.

At school, as elsewhere, this behaviour does not always take an obvious form. It can range from unwelcome, unreasonable verbal communication to electronic or other communication (regardless of whether or not a conversation ensues), such as:

- Unreasonable sending or delivery of letters, telegrams, packages, faxes or email.
- Bullying (including cyberbullying).
- · Sexual harassment.

What is sexual harassment?

Sexual harassment is any unwelcome sexual attention from a person who knows, or ought reasonably to know, that such attention is unwelcome; and unwelcome explicit (direct) or implicit (indirect) behaviour, suggestions, messages or remarks of a sexual nature that have the effect of offending, intimidating or humiliating the complainant or a related person.

Some sexually harassing behaviours include, but are not limited to:

- Using gender-based or homophobic terms like 'slut' and 'moffie' as put-downs.
- Making insulting comments or gestures (e.g. grunts or dog-like barking sounds, loud remarks rating a girl's looks or commenting on body parts, etc.).
- Using sexist racial slurs such as calling a woman a 'black bitch'.
- · Making sexual propositions like "How about it, babe?"
- Spreading rumours like "She'll do it with anyone."
- · 'Sexting' (sending sexual messages or pictures to a cellphone).
- Chasing and/or cornering women and girls to grab and kiss them, flip up their skirts, simulate rape, etc.
- Touching, pinching and grabbing body parts or clothing in a sexual way.
- Making verbal and physical threats, for example: "We're going to do it to you."
- Telling sexual jokes and distributing posters and T-shirts which have sexually
 offensive messages and/or pictures on them.
- · Persistent unwelcome sexual advances.

The most important factor in defining sexual harassment is how the behaviour makes the recipient feel. Jokes and compliments can make someone feel good and draw people closer together - sexual harassment does not. It involves one person exerting their power (their 'higher' gender status, age, physical strength and professional authority) over another in one of the ways listed above, so that the recipient feels insulted, intimidated, embarrassed or threatened.

We should feel concern if there are established patterns of harassment in schools in which people use abusive and insulting behaviour as a way of exerting power. Learners need to realise that a bullying, harassing culture at school inhibits personal growth and learning; equality is about sharing power, not abusing it. This becomes clearer to them when they observe educators showing respect to everyone equally and challenging those who practise harassing and violent behaviour. Breaking patterns of sexual harassment at school enables positive relationships that support healthy emotional, physical and intellectual growth.

Who gets harassed?

Although anyone can be harassed, researchers have found that boys are more likely to be sexual harassers and girls are more likely to be the targets. This is because sexual harassment expresses the sexism within our society.

According to the 2012 National School Violence Study in South Africa:

One in seven female learners – a total of 15.1 per cent – reported being victimised in ways other than the criminal acts explored. The majority of these incidents involved unwanted touching (70 per cent), being pushed or shoved into toilets (14.9 per cent), being subjected to verbal abuse or teasing (6.8 per cent), or being hit, punched or slapped (4.5 per cent).... [T] hese gender-based incidents involved either single perpetrators or several perpetrators who tended primarily to be male (90 per cent) (Burton and Leoschut 2013).

However, some boys do get harassed, and because people are reluctant to address the problem, they do not deal effectively with the harassment of boys. This can also affect girls negatively because boys who do not want to be harassed themselves will often try to 'prove' their masculinity by harassing girls.

While evidence shows that learners harass other learners, educators also harass learners (South African Council of Educators 2011). Some male educators are over-familiar with girls, comment on their appearance and physical features inappropriately and/or issue sexual invitations to them. Other educators (male and female) will insult learners as 'whores' or 'sluts' in the guise of disciplining them, or speak in a derogatory manner about the female body, and punish girls in class by pinching or poking them. Some male educators jeer at boys (including 'straight' boys) using anti-gay language in order to challenge them for lack of toughness and 'masculinity'.

Sometimes educators are also the victims of sexual harassment. Female educators are the usual targets, as well as those male educators who do not express stereotypical masculine behaviour.

What about bullying as another form of harassment?

Bullying involves one or more people singling out and deliberately and repeatedly hurting or harming physically or mentally another person or group of people. It can affect anyone, may occur at any age, and may be specifically targeted at certain individuals. It is done repeatedly over a period of time and involves an imbalance of power. This imbalance of power may come from difference in age, physical strength, status or popularity.

Types of bullying

- **Physical** includes hitting, pushing, slapping, tripping or pulling someone's hair. Can involve forcibly taking something, like lunch, money or possessions.
- Verbal includes threats, insults, ridiculing, name-calling and making racist or sexual slurs.
- Non-verbal includes writing hurtful messages, letters or graffiti, or distributing
 pictures and videos that hurt people or damage their reputations.
- **Social** includes gossiping, spreading rumours, leaving people out on purpose and breaking up friendships.
- **Sexual** includes passing inappropriate notes, making jokes, showing pictures, taunting and starting rumours of a sexual nature.
- Cyber includes using the internet, mobile phones or other electronic technologies to insult and harass, spread rumours, damage people's reputations, and distribute videos and pictures that harm them.
- Homophobic is sometimes called 'gay bashing'. However, in the school context it is better understood as bullying and discrimination directed at anyone whose sexual orientation or gender identity differs from the norm. In many of our schools, learners are marginalised if their physical characteristics or behaviour raise questions in others about their sex and gender. These learners include male gay learners and lesbian learners, as well as bisexual, transgender and intersex learners. Homophobic harassment is very common in our schools.

Boys often worry about being harassed by gay men. This fear is fuelled by the fact that gay relationships are stigmatised and gay men are stereotyped as sexual predators. However, the most common form of male-male harassment is not gay men harassing 'straight' ones, but insults that vilify gay men – homophobic harassment. This harassment is often brutal and extreme, and happens even when the gay or supposedly gay male has made no 'moves' on the harasser at all.

Harassment or cultural differences?

There can be a tendency to dismiss some incidents of harassment as a consequence of cultural differences. However, it is important to realise that culture is not fixed and unchanging. Not all members of a cultural group have the same viewpoint and cultures change constantly. Negative patterns of behaviour that develop in a society (e.g. aggression and male–female hostility and abuse) should not be justified in the name of culture.

No culture is free from sexism, although there may be differences in the ways sexism is expressed. South African women from different cultures experience similar gender-related beliefs and stereotypes – most commonly the devaluing of women. Such attitudes are often expressed through sexual harassment. Although there may be some cultural variance in sexually harassing behaviour, culture cannot be used either to excuse or to dismiss these abusive acts.

Why do we need to deal with sexual harassment as a priority?

It lays the groundwork for extreme abuse

Many people do not understand the connection between harassment and the more extreme forms of abuse such as rape, physical assault and sexual violation. Young boys who insult girls as 'sluts' or 'pigs' and remain unchecked can move on to degrading girls by lifting up their skirts, thrusting their hands between girls' legs or holding them down in mock intercourse. This can be the training ground for actual rape. We allow this progression when we tolerate harassing behaviour.

It impacts very negatively on learners' self-esteem and well-being

Self-esteem is shaped by the messages of approval or disapproval we get from society. Harassing words can slowly erode a child's self-esteem. At another level, ongoing harassment creates intense fear of extreme violence and rape, particularly in girls, who are more vulnerable to this than boys.

The effects of harassment on learners' emotional well-being can be devastating. It can result in learners dropping out of school and even in suicide attempts, especially in situations where there is repeated public humiliation and where silence rules and educators do not intervene. This is the situation in many schools.

It impacts on education

Some learners (often girls) may experience a form of discrimination that amounts to implicit abuse in the classroom, where educators side-line or belittle them, while others command educator attention and dominate discussions and classroom decision-making. At the same time, the overt harassment already described takes place in playgrounds, near and in school toilets, on the way to and from school, in corridors and in empty classrooms. When implicit discrimination steadily reduces confidence and ongoing harassment makes learners feel extremely insecure in their school environment, their ability to learn and grow intellectually is compromised and their school performance (and often attendance) suffers.

Learners who have been harassed often say that they have no one to report to. When they do report an incident, they may be ridiculed and made to feel that they have lied, or they are labelled as troublemakers. Sexual harassment thus makes it difficult for learners to get a fair education.

What can educators do to stop harassment of learners?

Learners spend most of their days at school and therefore what happens there can influence their behaviour significantly. School culture can encourage aggression and harassment amongst learners, but conversely it can socialise learners in respectful and non-violent attitudes and behaviours. Individual educators can influence learners strongly, even when they have little or no support from the school. Educators need not feel that they are only able to help with isolated cases of harassment. They can:

- · Be models of courteous, non-sexist, inclusive behaviour and communication.
- Observe their learners carefully to pick up signs of harassment, help them report incidents, refer them to relevant support services, and also monitor learners who have reported harassment and may need support.
- · Use the curriculum and day-to-day classroom and school activities to challenge sexist and homophobic attitudes and practices before these become established. The life orientation curriculum (and also other subject curricula) offers many opportunities. Educators can teach learners about the following: sexual harassment and the importance of reporting it; different sexual orientations;



2 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

values of respect and mutual support; and how to keep themselves safe. They can familiarise their learners with the *Speak Out!* handbook for learners (Department of Basic Education 2013, available from district and provincial Department of Basic Education offices).

- Use positive discipline with their learners and develop classroom codes of conduct (rules) together with learners. The codes should be based on respect and equality as core values.
- Manage their classroom so that all learners are given equal opportunities to contribute and work cooperatively with each other.
- Advocate with school management and colleagues to persuade them to recognise the problem of sexual harassment at school and deal with it.

The importance of the school taking responsibility

As with ordinary bullying, educators can contribute to ending harassment if their school takes responsibility. The school can do this by developing policy and putting in place structures and procedures that show it is serious and holds itself accountable. Here are some key pointers for policymaking:

- Clearly define harassment and possible disciplinary action. Your policy should explain the types of behaviour that constitute harassment and lay out possible disciplinary actions the school can take against perpetrators.
- Ensure confidentiality and prohibit retaliation. Your policy should ensure that complaints will be handled with as much confidentiality as possible and make it clear that retaliation is definitely prohibited.
- Lay out a formal complaint procedure. The procedure will inform the school community of the following: how, where and with whom to file a complaint; what will happen during the investigative process and how final decisions will be made; the time frames that will generally apply in an investigation of harassment; the possible penalties for committing harassment; and how to file an appeal.
- Every learner, parent and school employee should receive a copy of, and regular reminders of, the policy and complaint procedures or a brochure or pamphlet summarising them. Place posters in hallways, classrooms, administrators' offices, the library or other public places.
- It is crucial that the school enables and validates learner reporting of harassment and violation. If the policy is not implemented and/or the school does not act on reported cases, learners will feel that justice has not been done and will stop reporting harassment. Learners are put at risk if they report without feeling confident that action will be taken. In addition, if educators are not supported by school authorities, they could become vulnerable to harassment themselves and their efforts to change classroom and school culture may be ridiculed or even actively opposed.
- Form a team for effective action. Responsibilities must be clear when reporting, investigating and finalising cases. Final accountability rests with the principal, who should initiate a school policy on GBV. However, the principal can delegate responsibility to designated educators or a group consisting of the school governing body, school management team or school safety team (including educators, learners and caregivers). This group can deal with reported cases by investigating and finalising cases through disciplinary hearings (for serious offences) and corrective measures, and they can ensure that harassed learners are supported and protected from further harassment.

In most schools there are educators who could fill these roles or cooperate with the team as referring educators. However, if there is no whole-school policy or code of conduct with disciplinary structures and procedures, individual educators will have to work more informally against harassment. They should find other ways



Workshop 7 deals
with developing policy
on GBV at school. In
Workshop 2, Handouts
5A and 5B outline
corrective actions
for different levels of
harassment. Handout 6
offers a simple report
format for learners and
educators to report an
incident.

to encourage reporting and provide follow-up support. A community network with social workers, the South African Police Service and community-based and non-government organisations might help to support harassed learners and encourage action by the school.

Types of corrective action recommended

Handout 5A deals with corrective actions to take with perpetrators of harassment at schools. A key issue is the message corrective actions send to learners about how to solve problems like harassment. The Department of Basic Education recommends a 'positive discipline' approach in which the offender has to review his/her values and attitudes and do community service, work with a peer action group, etc. Serious harassers can also be suspended from some or all school activities and, in extreme cases, the process for expulsion from the school can be applied for or the case can be reported to the police.

School codes of conduct for learners must be implemented in line with section 8(3) of the South African Schools Act. No. 84 of 1996. Example of a Code of Conduct for a School (DOE 2008) lays out fair standards for the issuing of verbal or written warnings for offences at Levels 1 or 2; expulsion can only be applied at Level 4 and only after a formal disciplinary hearing (see Handout 5B for more information on Levels 1-4). However, suspension or expulsion are options because the priority concern is the harassed learner's right to a 'conducive learning environment'.

Anti-harassment programmes and campaigns at school

Schools can organise workshops, school assemblies, staff development days and school governing body meetings to raise awareness of harassment and share strategies for dealing with it. The first step to ending it is to acknowledge the problem. Developing policy and a school campaign against harassment sends out a strong message that educators take the problem seriously.

Peer education programmes and campaigns are even more effective. See the Speak Out! handbook for ideas such as forming a peer club for solidarity and group action against harassment. This workshop also includes activities that can be used in a harassment educational programme.

FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR

WorkShop 2

WORKSHOP LENGTH:

2 HOURS 45 MINUTES

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- · Provide a context within which harassment takes place in South Africa.
- Explain key definitions of harassment and types of harassment with a particular focus on harassment that takes place in schools.
- · Provide information on legislation that deals with harassment.
- Outline strategies that can be adopted by schools to deal with harassment.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- Explain various contexts in which harassment occurs in South Africa.
- Define harassment and identify the various types of harassment.
- · Refer learners to appropriate institutions that deal with harassment.
- Design prevention and remedial programmes to deal with harassment in schools.

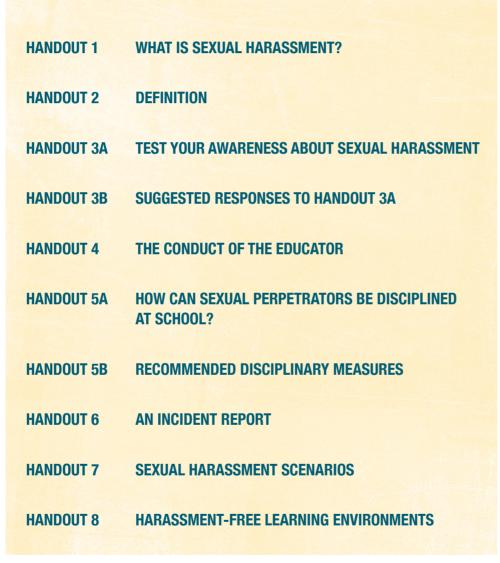
OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- Topic 1. What is sexual harassment? (30 minutes)
- Topic 2. Issues and misconceptions related to sexual harassment (30 minutes)
- Topic 3. Disciplinary action against sexual harassment (30 minutes)
- Topic 4. Reporting sexual harassment (15 minutes)
- Topic 5. Responding to incidents and reports (40 minutes)
- Topic 6. Promoting harassment-free learning (10 minutes)

MATERIALS

- Coloured markers
- Flipchart
- Laptop (optional)
- · Masking tape or drawing pins
- · Overhead projector (optional)

WORKSHOP 2 HANDOUTS







GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 2

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



- Be prepared to deal with some confusion surrounding the notions of harassment and discipline. Research indicates that some educators use sexual harassment as a disciplinary tool, e.g. accusing girls of acting like 'sluts' when they use sexual language or flaunt their sexuality. Harassment in the guise of negative discipline can erode a learner's trust, confidence and identity.
- Spend more time on this workshop if necessary. Sexual harassment is very poorly identified and addressed in schools. Therefore, you may need to spend more time on this workshop than the basic allocations per activity suggest. If so, conduct the workshop over two sessions: Topics 1 and 2 focus on understanding sexual harassment and how to respond to it, while Topics 3–6 focus on taking action at school.
- Dealing with painful emotions. Note that this session is quite likely to raise painful and emotional experiences among workshop participants and their learners, such as fear and trauma after severe harassment; harassment that has been followed by assault; or harassment that has continued after a rape. Carefully consider how you could support distressed participants, both during the session and afterwards. It is vital that you have a list of contacts and support organisations to which you can refer participants who need support.

LENGTH:



INTRODUCTION

Provide an overview of the workshop and, if necessary, give participants the opportunity to get to know you and the other participants.

TOPIC 1. WHAT IS SEXUAL HARASSMENT?

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- · Handout 1. What is sexual harassment?
- · Handout 2. Definition

Task. Harassment or not?

This task should demonstrate that whether or not a behaviour constitutes sexual harassment depends on a variety of factors.

Small group discussion. Distribute Handout 1. Many of the listed behaviours are examples of both sexual harassment and non-sexual harassment. Ask participants to identify the factors which make the behaviour harassment. Encourage them to add their own example(s) from observation and personal experiences at the bottom of the handout. After they have completed the sheet individually, ask them to compare and discuss their responses in their groups.

Report back. See Background information on sexual harassment (pages 48 and 49) to help you lead a discussion on the factors which make behaviour sexual harassment. Legally, the effect of the behaviour on the recipient, rather than the perpetrator's intentions, determines whether or not a specific behaviour is sexually harassing.

Encourage participants to give as many examples of harassment at their schools as possible. Write them up on the flipchart and ask where they took place. Discuss why perpetrators choose these places. Emphasise that recognising and monitoring hotspots is part of identifying harassment as a reality and an issue at schools.

Optional. Ask groups to prepare short role-plays illustrating one of the common behaviours at their school (either a behaviour already on the list or one of their own examples). If it is a behaviour that is only sometimes sexual harassment, ask them to role-play it in both ways: as harassment and non-harassment. The audience should comment on what made the behaviour harassment or non-harassment.

Distribute Handout 2. This information will help to distinguish harassment behaviour from other forms of GBV. Point out that these learner-friendly definitions reflect formal legal definitions of the different forms of GBV.









TOPIC 2. ISSUES AND MISCONCEPTIONS RELATED TO SEXUAL HARASSMENT

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Handout 3A. Test your awareness about sexual harassment
- Handout 3B. Suggested responses to Handout 3A
- Handout 4. The conduct of the educator

Task. Discussing issues and misconceptions

This task addresses issues such as the impact of sexual harassment, misconceptions and stereotypes about sexual harassment, concerns about false allegations, and the role and obligations of the educator. (The Background information on pages 48-52 explores these aspects.)

Individual task and small group discussion. Ask participants to complete the exercise on Handout 3A. Then distribute Handout 3B to small groups so they can review their answers together and generate suggestions on how educators can counter harassment (there is space at the end of the handout for their ideas).

Report back. Summarise issues that arose in the group discussions. Ask participants if their opinions changed as a result of the discussions. Record participants' ideas for educator action on the flipchart. (See Background information pages 52-53.)

Reinforce the seriousness of sexual harassment and the educator's role by referring participants to Handout 4.

TOPIC 3. DISCIPLINARY ACTION AGAINST SEXUAL HARASSMENT

Task 1. Grouping offences at different levels of seriousness

Small groups. Distribute Handout 5A. Examples of sexual harassment and violation have been organised according to four levels of seriousness so that schools can respond fairly and consistently. Ask participants to:

- · Discuss the grouping of offences.
- Add other offences identified in earlier activities. They must assign these offences to the appropriate levels (in the table on Handout 5A or on the back of the handout).

Report back. Discuss how participants grouped offences by referring to earlier discussions and definitions.

Task 2. Identifying appropriate and positive disciplinary measures

Whole group. Explain to participants that they are going to look at how to discipline offenders. What does 'positive discipline' mean? Is 'positive discipline' appropriate for instances described in Levels 1-3 in Handout 5A? Give reasons for your answers.

Point out to participants that violent punishment endorses violence and could encourage retaliation and further harassment. Disciplinary action should help the offender realise the pain he/she has caused and, if possible, make reparation. However, the victim must not be put at risk. You want to try to change the perpetrator's attitude so he/she will not repeat the offence.

Small group discussion. Ask participants to suggest corrective actions for offences at the Levels 1-3 left blank on Handout 5A. Provide the following auidelines:

Your suggestions for corrective action must:

- · Be set at an appropriate level
- Help to ensure the victim's safety
- Provide 'positive discipline'
- Avoid violent forms of punishment.



Level 4 offence and corrective actions measures have already been filled in on Handout 5A. They apply to sexual violation and assault/ rape, which are not the focus of this workshop.

Report back. Facilitate feedback and discussion. Then refer participants to Handout 5B and let them compare the Department of Basic Education's recommendations with their responses. Useful suggestions can be added to the official list.

LENGTH:



MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- · Handout 4. The conduct of the educator
- Handout 5A. How can sexual perpetrators be disciplined at school?
- Handout 5B. Recommended disciplinary measures



Discuss how participants' ideas can help their schools develop their own codes of conduct, as required by section 8 of the South African Schools Act, No 84 of 1996, to address sexual harassment. Also emphasise the importance of mandatory disciplinary procedures, such as verbal and written warnings, and informing parents about disciplinary action: these are outlined in Handout 5B.



TOPIC 4. REPORTING SEXUAL HARASSMENT

MATERIALS

- Prepared questions on a flipchart
- Handout 6. An incident report

Task. Exploring the reporting issues

Whole group. Ask participants the following questions. Discuss their responses to each question before proceeding to the next. Record answers on the flipchart.

- 1. Who might report an incident of sexual harassment at school? Should it always be the victim who reports?
- 2. How can the reporting be done? (For example, verbal, written, formal, informal, etc.)
- 3. What information should the form always ask for when a formal written report is made?
- 4. What guidelines would you suggest on how to manage with a harassed learner?

Suggested answers

(Refer participants to Handout 6)

- 1. Any of the people listed on the incident report form (Handout 6), e.g. the victim or someone who witnessed the incident.
- As long as the appropriate information is given and the key aspects are recorded, it could be verbal or written, formal or informal. For example, the information could be transferred to a form later from rough notes taken on the spot. A learner might report verbally to an educator, another learner or a parent who takes notes. Or the official form might be the first record.
- 3. The information required for completing the incident form (Handout 6); check through the form with participants.
- 4. You need to ensure that: the person reporting feels safe; the circumstances are confidential and remain so as long as possible; you explain what will happen next; and you give (or refer them to) counselling, if necessary.

In summary, emphasise possible benefits of increased reporting and follow-up: perpetrators would be exposed and deterred; harassment would be recognised for what it is; more learners would be encouraged to report; harassment hotspots around the school would be properly identified and monitored; learners (especially girls) would feel safer; harassment would be reduced, etc.

kshop

TOPIC 5. RESPONDING TO INCIDENTS AND REPORTS

MATERIALS

- Handout 5A. How can sexual harassers be disciplined at school?
- Handout 5B. Recommended disciplinary measures
- Handout 6. An incident report
- Handout 7. Sexual harassment scenarios
- Background information pages 52 and 53

Task. Applying the tools and strategies to given cases

NOTE:



The scenarios are designed to enable participants to strategise ways to deal with a variety of sexually harassing behaviours.

Small group discussion. Allocate *one* of the scenarios on Handout 7 to each group so that different scenarios can each be explored in depth. You can select and adapt scenarios to suit your participants. Ask participants to suggest strategies for dealing with their sexual harassment scenario. They should apply their knowledge from the workshop and also use the formats in Handouts 5A, 5B and 6 to help them decide:

- · How to respond and whether misconceptions might need to be corrected
- · What level of offence the harasser has perpetrated
- · What disciplinary action would be suitable
- How the harassed learner should be supported
- How the report form should be filled in (complete it as far as possible).

Report back. Ensure that the different scenarios are explored. List the suggested strategies and discuss any other strategies schools could adopt to prevent these kinds of behaviour.

LENGTH:



NOTE:



This activity introduces participants to reporting incidents of harassment, ensuring conditions that encourage reporting and using a simple user-friendly format that is suitable for both educators and learners.



LENGTH: **MINUTES**

TOPIC 6. PROMOTING HARASSMENT-FREE LEARNING

MATERIALS

Handout 8. Harassment-free learning environments

Task. Harassment-free learning

Whole and small group. Participants are asked to suggest ways their school would be different if sexual harassment were eliminated.

Feedback. In addition to the ideas participants suggest, you may also wish to add the following senior primary learners' comments.

- · You could joke around and no one would get hurt.
- There would be no boys against girls and girls against boys.
- You wouldn't have to be afraid to walk down the corridor.
- The school would be like one big family.

Remind participants that this is the kind of positive environment we would like to create for our learners and ourselves.

NOTE:



Participants will have the opportunity to consider how sexual harassment can affect the school environment.

SUGGESTED FOLLOW-UP ACTIVITIES

- Observe the kinds of harassment that occur in your school and strategise
 ways to handle incidents involving harassment. Discuss helpful coping skills
 and mechanisms with concerned colleagues and share these with each other.
- 2. Use the Consciousness Dial (page 23) of the *Values in Action* manual (Department of Basic Education 2011). Explore with colleagues and learners how specific forms of sexual harassment express one or more of the types of intolerance and discrimination displayed on the Consciousness Dial. Discuss how this affects values and school culture.
- 3. Declare your school to be a harassment-free environment. Organise a display which includes learners' opinions on how they would feel if there was no harassment at school.
- 4. Conduct workshops on sexual harassment with educators, learners and parents in your school community.
- 5. Raise the issue of there being no policy on sexual harassment at your school (e.g. definitions of harassment, a code of conduct and set procedures for reporting, disciplining harassers and following cases through). The South African Schools Act mandates the setting up of a code of conduct, i.e. a school is in contravention of the Act if there isn't one. The National School Safety Framework can be used to help put these features in place. Refer to Example of a Code of Conduct for a School (2008), available at www. thutong.doe.gov.za/ResourceDownload.aspx?id=39278&userid.
- 6. Help learners to start youth clubs or action groups such as the Girls'/Boys' Education Movement (GEM/BEM) or Soul Buddyz clubs at school. Learners should manage these clubs themselves, as far as possible, with the support of educators where necessary. Clubs can:
 - Teach peers procedures for reporting harassment and getting help.
 - Involve learners in developing school and classroom codes of conduct.
 - Organise debates focused on harassment.
 - Develop plays, songs and poems that help to raise awareness.
 - Offer 'buddyz on the road' to escort learners who get harassed walking to and from school.
 - Help monitor the school toilets for safety.
 - · Organise 'stop sexual bullying' campaigns.

USEFUL RESOURCES

The *Speak Out!* handbook, pages 28 and 29 (Department of Basic Education 2013, available from district and provincial Department of Basic Education offices) is an excellent resource for youth groups.

Other useful resources are *Challenging Homophobic Bullying in Schools* (Department of Basic Education 2014a) and *Example of a Code of Conduct for a School* (Department of Education 2008).



workShop 2 HANDOUTS

HANDOUT 1. WHAT IS SEXUAL HARASSMENT?



Part 1

Sexual harassment is often undetected and unchecked by educators, and unreported by learners, because there are different ideas and uncertainty about what it is. Read this list of behaviours and decide if they are sexual harassment *Always*, *Sometimes* or *Never*. Tick the appropriate column.

BEHAVIOUR	ALWAYS	SOMETIMES	NEVER
1. Comments on your body, dress or personal appearance			
2. Derogatory comments about or to gay men and boys, and lesbians			
3. Casual physical contact (e.g. hugging, patting)			
4. Jokes with sexual themes			
5. Whistling, catcalls			
6. Having someone stare at your body			
7. Invitations for dates			
8. Using terms like 'sweetheart', 'baby', etc.			
9. Casual conversations			
10. Graffiti			

Part 2

Add three examples each of sexual harassment and non-sexual harassment behaviour you have experienced or noticed at your school (amongst learners or educators) or in other settings in your life.

EXAMPLES OF SEXUAL HARASSMENT	EXAMPLES OF NON-SEXUAL HARASSMENT
1.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.

Adapted from: Bond. 1989. Community Action Research Conference.

HANDOUT 2. DEFINITION

Recently there have been many changes to the law; therefore, we have new ways of looking at forms of GBV. 'Sexual abuse' is now the term we use for describing sexual harassment, illegal sexual penetration (rape) and sexual violation.

The following information is based on the definition in the Speak Out! handbook (Department of Basic Education 2013).

What is sexual harassment?

It is when someone

- Talks to you about sex when you don't want them to.
- Touches, pinches or grabs parts of your body you don't want touched.
- Sends you sexual notes, SMSs or pictures from a cellphone (called 'sexting').
- Writes rude graffiti about you, or spreads sexual rumours about you.
- Makes sexual comments or jokes.
- Calls you rude names, like 'bitch', 'moffie', 'izitabane', 'slut', etc.
- Demands sex in return for a bribe, like higher marks.





HANDOUT 3A. TEST YOUR AWARENESS ABOUT SEXUAL HARASSMENT



How well do you understand sexual harassment? Record in the right-hand column whether you $Agree\ (\checkmark)$ or $Disagree\ (\times)$ with each statement, and discuss your reasons in your group.

STATEMENT	AGREE OR DISAGREE?
Females are more likely to experience sexual harassment than males.	
2. Serious sexual harassment occurs primarily in the workplace, not in schools.	
3. The effects of sexual harassment are much less serious than the effects of sexual assault.	
4. Sexual harassers are always people in a more powerful position than the harassed person (i.e. people in positions of authority, like educators and bosses).	
5. People often allege falsely that they have been harassed.	
6. The idea of sexual harassment is a new one created by people who don't really understand traditional male and female roles in cultures other than their own.	
7. Gay men/boys often harass straight boys, so it is not harassment if people warn off gays to teach them a lesson.	
8. Bullying at school is an entirely different problem from sexual harassment.	
9. When schoolgirls flaunt their sexuality (e.g. by using sexual language, wearing revealing clothes, etc.) educators who reprimand them and say they are acting like 'sluts' are exercising discipline and not harassing these girls.	
10. Ordinary teaching and learning often contribute towards sexual harassment.	
11. It is impossible for girls to sexually harass other girls.	
12. Sexual harassment is too deep-rooted and widespread for educators to be able to effect any change.	

HANDOUT 3B. SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 3A

1. Females are more likely to experience sexual harassment than males.

Aaree

Because women are frequently perceived as sexual objects, it is often considered 'natural' for men to treat women in a sexual way. This results in women being more likely than men to experience sexual harassment.

2. Serious sexual harassment occurs primarily in the workplace, not in schools.

Disagree

Sexual harassment occurs not only in the workplace, but also on the street, at home and at school.

3. The effects of sexual harassment are much less serious than the effects of sexual assault.

Disagree

Sexual harassment is part of a continuum of (usually) violence that affects and restricts women's and girls' lives, and it is often perpetrated by male persons. Women/girls who are sexually harassed at school or work may experience more extreme forms of violence too - date rape or sexual assault. In addition, they never know when an incident will lead to more extreme assault, and they may be unable to leave the situation easily if they are at school or in a job. The effects can therefore be very serious - people can experience ongoing misery, fear and dread.

4. Sexual harassers are always people in a more powerful position than the harassed person (i.e. people in authority, like educators and bosses).

Disagree

Co-workers, customers and other learners can also create a hostile, harassing school or work environment. Although anyone can be a sexual harasser, most sexual harassers are male.

5. People often allege falsely that they have been harassed.

Disagree

Because people who speak out about harassment experiences are often disbelieved, ridiculed or labelled as 'trouble makers', most people are reluctant to complain about sexual harassment and most incidents of sexual harassment are not reported. If there was more reporting in our schools, it would almost certainly reduce harassment and change attitudes.







6. The idea of sexual harassment is a new one created by people who don't really understand traditional male and female roles in cultures other than their own.

Disagree

The term 'sexual harassment' is quite recent, but sexual harassment has existed as a problem for years. Although there may be some cultural differences in sexually harassing behaviour, similar gender-related beliefs and roles that devalue women are found across different South African (and other) cultures. Culture should not be distorted and used to justify aggressive and abusive behaviour.

7. Gay men/boys often harass straight boys, so it is not harassment if people warn off gays to teach them a lesson.

Disagree

Gay men are often stereotyped as sexual predators, although the male–male harassment that is actually more common is when heterosexual males insult and vilify gay men. These attacks often escalate into serious physical beatings. Most gay people do not harass 'straight'/heterosexual people.

8. Bullying at school is an entirely different problem from sexual harassment.

Disagree

Sexual harassment is actually a form of bullying, since the intention of the harasser is to put down or humiliate another person, often with threats of violence. In schools where there is a lot of bullying, sexual harassment is likely to be common. Homophobic bullying is a clear example. Like other bullying, it tends to be repeated until someone intervenes, and generally results in silent withdrawal, anxiety and depression, and can have similarly devastating and long-lasting effects on the bullied learner, sometimes leading to suicide.

9. When schoolgirls flaunt their sexuality (e.g. by using sexual language, wearing revealing clothes, etc.) educators who reprimand them and say they are acting like 'sluts' are exercising discipline and not harassing these girls.

Disagree

It is unnecessary to use personal, sexual and insulting language in order to manage the classroom effectively and discipline learners. Using harassment as a disciplinary tool also makes it difficult to address the problem of sexual harassment when it arises.

10. Ordinary everyday teaching and learning often contribute towards sexual harassment.

Agree

For example, in many schools and classrooms there is inequality regarding who gets to speak the most in class discussions, or does chores like cleaning, or gets leadership positions, or gets access to resources, or is encouraged in their studies and gets advice on careers. In addition, some educators do not communicate respectfully and courteously with all their learners. Over time this can affect learners' sense of identity and self-esteem. Girls who are socialised to

be quiet, shy and dutiful may get sidelined, and gay learners might be ignored or casually ridiculed by educators who disapprove of them.

11. It is impossible for girls to sexually harass other girls.

Disagree

For example, girls can put other girls down (and often do) by calling them 'sluts' or 'whores' and making them feel worthless; they might even beat up other girls to 'teach them a lesson'. Girls might harass other girls who are (or are perceived as) lesbian or transgender.

12. Sexual harassment is too deep-rooted and widespread for educators to be able to effect any change.

Disagree

School children spend the greater part of their waking hours with educators at school and are greatly influenced by what happens there. Educators can address sexual harassment in various ways, such as:

- Modelling courteous, non-sexist, inclusive behaviour to their learners.
- · Carefully observing their learners to pick up signs of harassment.

and your own	n suggestions for what educators can do to bring about cha	ige.









HANDOUT 4. THE CONDUCT OF THE EDUCATOR

The South African Council of Educators Code of Ethics outlines the following about behaviour of an educator.

The educator

- respects the dignity, beliefs and constitutional rights of learners and in particular children, which includes the right to privacy and confidentiality;
- strives to enable learners to develop a set of values consistent with the fundamental rights contained in the Constitution of South Africa;
- avoids any form of humiliation, and refrains from any form of abuse, physical or psychological;
- refrains from improper physical contact with learners;
- promotes gender equality;
- refrains from any form of sexual harassment (physical or otherwise) of learners;
- refrains from any form of sexual relationship with learners at any school;
- uses appropriate language and behaviour in his or her interaction with learners, and acts in such a way as to elicit respect from the learners;
- takes reasonable steps to ensure safety of the learners.

HANDOUT 5A. HOW CAN SEXUAL PERPETRATORS BE DISCIPLINED AT SCHOOL?



Write suggestions for between two and four suitable disciplinary measures for Level 1-3 offences in the spaces provided.

LEVEL OF OFFENCE	EXAMPLES OF MISCONDUCT	PROCEDURES OR CORRECTIVE ACTIONS
Level 1	Making rude jokes Graffiti of a sexual nature	
Level 2	Circulating offensive material (e.g. homophobic statements, insulting sexual information about girls at school, etc.) Threatening assault and intimidation of a fellow learner	
Level 3	 Pornography distribution at school Improper sexual suggestions Sexual harassment (repeated sexual invitations, touching, pinching, grabbing, demanding sex in return for a bribe, etc.) 'Sexting': sending sexual messages and pictures to a cellphone; and sexual cyberbullying 	
Level 4	Persistent harassment despite previous corrective measures Public indecency (exposing sexual organs, having sex in public, etc.) Sexual assault and rape	 The school governing body can suspend a learner from school for a week The learner's parents/caregivers must be informed of a violation charge A letter outlining the decision must be placed in learner's personal file Cases of sexual violation must be reported to the police within 72 hours The school governing body may recommend to the provincial education head of department that the learner be expelled; expulsion can only take place after a fair hearing.



Adapted from Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse: A Handbook for Learners on How to Prevent Sexual Abuse in Public Schools (Department of Basic Education 2013)



HANDOUT 5B. RECOMMENDED DISCIPLINARY MEASURES



These measures should inform school codes of conduct for learners which must be implemented in line with section 8(3) of the South African Schools Act (SASA), No. 84 of 1996.

LEVEL OF OFFENCE	EXAMPLES OF MISCONDUCT	PROCEDURES OR CORRECTIVE ACTIONS
Level 1	 Making rude jokes Graffiti of a sexual nature 	Verbal warning by the educator or principal Learner must give a public apology Improving school environment (e.g. scrubbing toilets) provided that parents are informed and the security of the learner is assured Learner must replace and fix damaged property Temporary suspension from some school activities (e.g. sport, cultural).
Level 2	 Circulating offensive material (e.g. homophobic statements, insulting sexual information about girls at school, etc.) Threatening assault and intimidation of a fellow learner 	 Supervised schoolwork focused on learning values of respect Verbal or written warning from the educator or principal Conflict resolution in a peer education group for a specified period Temporary suspension from some school activities (e.g. sport, cultural).
Level 3	 Pornography distribution at school Improper sexual suggestions Sexual harassment (repeated sexual invitations, touching, pinching, grabbing, demanding sex in return for a bribe, etc.) 	 Disciplinary hearing Detention with an assignment on values Detention with community service Detention and work with leaders of a peer education group for a period Temporary suspension from some school activities (e.g. sport, cultural).
Level 4	Persistent harassment despite previous corrective measures Public indecency (exposing sexual organs, having sex in public, etc.) Sexual assault and rape	The school governing body can suspend a learner from school for a week The learner's parents/caregivers must be informed of a violation charge A letter outlining the decision must be placed in learner's personal file Cases of sexual violation must be reported to the police within 72 hours The school governing body may recommend to the provincial education head of department that the learner be expelled; expulsion can only take place after a fair hearing.

Adapted from Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse: A Handbook for Learners on How to Prevent Sexual Abuse in Public Schools (Department of Basic Education 2013)

Date:

HANDOUT 6. AN INCIDENT REPORT

Adapted from the National School Safety Framework (Department of Basic Education 2014b, pages 58 and 59).

(g) Other

(f) Parent

(d) School safety officer/team

(c) Learner

(b) Educator

(a) Principal

Person reporting incident:



School:_ District:

Incident number:

EMIS number:

Circuit:

Incident report

Date and time of incident?	Who was involved?	Where occurred?	What happened?
		 On way to or from school Just outside school grounds In classroom In toilets Behind toilets In playgrounds Between classes Behind the school building At the gate Tuck shop Office or staff room Car park Other 	
Necessary response – who needs to do what?			
Referred to:	 District support team Discipline committee Clinic or hospital Report to the police Other 		

Signature of principal



Incident report (continued)		
Name of school:	EMIS number:	
Reported by:	Incident number:	
Officials involved:	Contact details:	
Description of incident:		
Action taken:		
Signature: Principal	Signature: Chairperson SGBSignature: Witness	

HANDOUT 7. SEXUAL HARASSMENT SCENARIOS

One of these four scenarios will be allocated to your group to discuss.

Scenario 1

Some new graffiti has appeared in the school toilets which reads: "SEX: 072 123 4567 Nomsa," It's a fake number, but this message is written in both the girls' and the boys' toilets, and several girls named Nomsa are upset. Nomsa Z. from Grade 6 tells her educator, Miss S., that she recently refused to be the girlfriend of a certain Grade 7 boy, Bheki. Since then, her friend Thuli has seen him sneaking out of the girls' toilets with a felt-tip pen in his hand. When Thuli went into the toilets, she found the fresh graffiti not yet dry - on the wall. Nomsa feels humiliated because the Grade 7 boys now look at her and laugh when she walks past and she is also scared that Bheki will do something even worse to her soon. Nomsa seems extremely upset. Miss S. says she will take up the matter. After thinking about it for a few days, she consults her colleague Mr D., an older, experienced teacher who teaches Bheki's Grade 7 class. Mr D. says, "This is surely iust a joke. Miss S? The girl is over-reacting. It will all blow over soon and anyway, these learners are just children involved in childish nonsense."

Scenario 2

Mrs F. is approached by Puma, a girl in her Grade 7 class, who is holding back tears and looking extremely stressed. She identifies a boy in the class who keeps touching her as she walks past his desk during class, between classes and so on. He grabs her leg, pats her bum or tries to pinch her breasts. She has asked him to stop, but he laughs at her and continues. She has tried avoiding his desk altogether, but there are times when she has no choice but to go past him. Mrs F. moves Pumla to another desk and gives the boy a talking to. He looks sulky and says it is not true and challenges Mrs F. to prove it. She is a bit short-sighted and would have been unable to see easily anyway because both learners sit at the back of the class. She is not sure what to do.

Scenario 3

Mr M., the history teacher, has noticed for some time that a group of learners has been teasing a boy from his class, usually during break times or between lessons as learners are walking around. They call him names like 'moffie' or 'izitabane' when they see him, and walk mockingly behind him acting in an 'effeminate' way and threatening to beat him up if he comes anywhere near them. There are rumours at school that this particular boy is gay and Mr M. has heard colleagues in the staff room talking about him and saving that it would be a good thing if he was beaten up. The boy looks very scared and tense whenever Mr M. sees him. He used to perform well in History but his attention level and marks have been dropping steadily. However, he has not reported anything to a teacher. Mr M. feels that something should be done.

Scenario 4

A group of Grade 10 girl learners have reported six boys at the school to their educator. Mrs L. These boys often make comments about female learners' bodies and call them insulting names when they are walking down a school corridor. If the girls get angry or ask them to stop, the comments get worse and the boys seem to enjoy their distress. The girls say that these boys do the same thing on the roadside when the girls are walking to or from school. Some of the boys also follow the girls for some distance. calling them names, inviting them for sex there and then and laughing loudly. One of them said, "These girls need some rape to sort them out, hey guys." Mrs L. is not sure how seriously this should be viewed and whether she should deal with it herself or take it further.







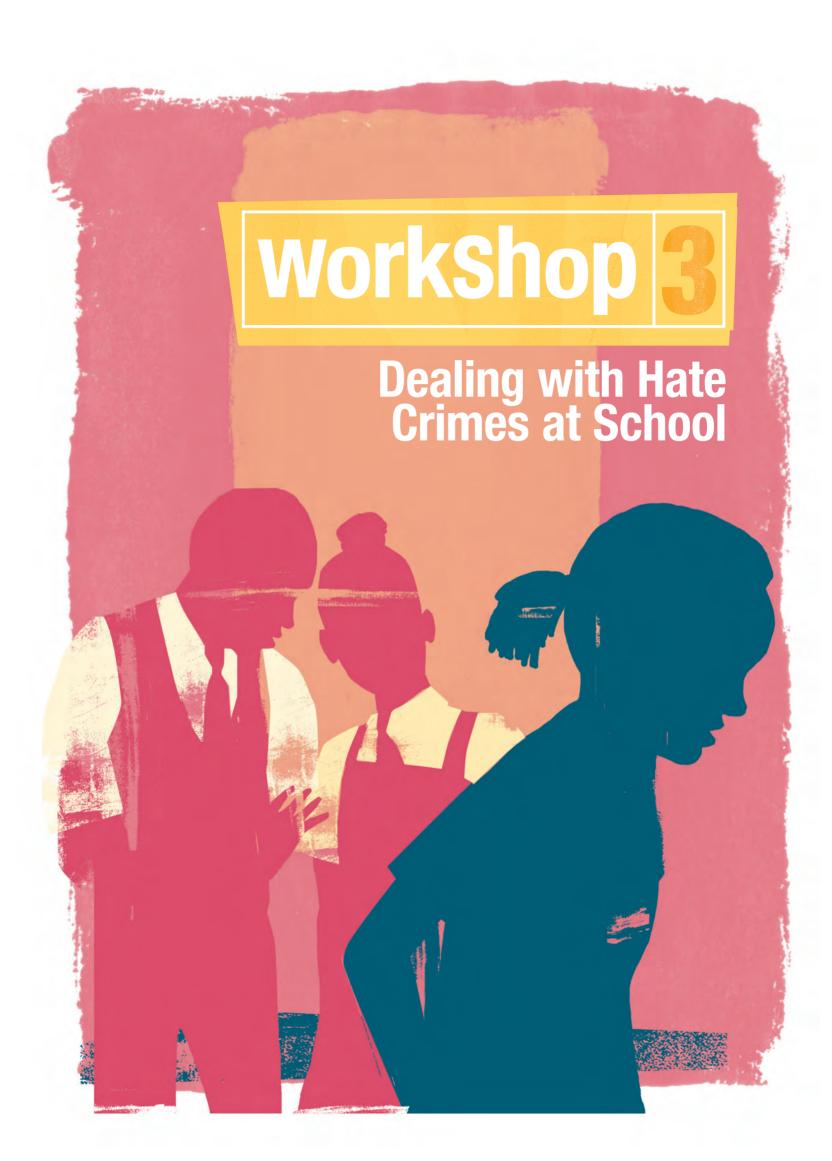


HANDOUT 8. HARASSMENT-FREE LEARNING ENVIRONMENTS

1.			
•			
2.			

3.	
4.	
5.	





BACKGROUND INFORMATION

What is hate crime?

Hate crime is the violence of intolerance and bigotry (intolerance towards people who hold different opinions to oneself), intended to hurt and intimidate someone because of their race, ethnicity, national origin, religion, sexual orientation or disability. A 'hate crime' is an act which constitutes a criminal offence that is motivated in part or whole by prejudice or hate.

Anyone can be a victim of a hate crime so it is not only minority or vulnerable groups that can benefit from having protection from hate crimes. Hate crimes can be acts of prejudice and discrimination. They can also be message crimes (crimes intended to send a message to a particular group that they are unwelcome), are often violent, are under-reported and can be group crimes.

What are some types of hate crimes common in our schools?

- Racism the belief that all members of a race possess characteristics or abilities specific to that race, especially to distinguish it as being inferior or superior to another race.
- Xenophobia the unreasoned fear of that which is perceived to be foreign or strange.
- **Sexism** prejudice, stereotyping or discrimination, typically against women, on the basis of sex.
- Homophobia the term used to describe the irrational, extreme fear, loathing
 and intolerance that some people feel towards those whose sexual orientation is
 towards members of their own sex rather than towards members of the opposite
 sex.
- Bigotry intolerance towards those who hold different opinions from oneself.

Homophobia

Learners whose physical characteristics and behaviour raise questions in others about their sex and gender are marginalised in many schools. They can be:

- Lesbian. A woman who is sexually, physically, emotionally and romantically attracted to another woman.
- **Gay.** A woman or man who is sexually, physically, emotionally and romantically attracted to another person of the same sex.
- **Bisexual.** A person who is attracted to both men and women, being capable of having romantic, sexual, intimate feelings for/or a love relationship with someone of the same sex and/or with someone of the opposite sex. Note: Being bisexual does not mean that people necessarily have feelings at the same time or that there is equal amount of attraction to both sexes.
- Transgender. A person who does not conform to the sex to which they are assigned at birth, e.g. boys who are physically boys but feel themselves to be girls, and girls who feel they are really boys.
- Intersex. A person whose body is neither typically male nor typically female.

These types of sexual orientation (gender identity) are often collectively called LGBTI – for lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex (see pages 94 and 95 for a list of LGBTI organisations).



In our schools, LGBTI learners are generally bullied/harassed similarly to other marginalised learners: the abuse may be verbal, physical or emotional. It can include name-calling, following and taunting or threatening, cyberbullying and beating up. It may also take the extreme form of 'corrective' rape, intended to show a lesbian how to be a 'real woman', or to show a male gay person how a 'real' man behaves.

Homophobic bullying at school, like bullying in general, is often repeated and relentless. It can target not only learners but also educators who are (or are perceived to be) LGBTI, as well as learners who have an LGBTI parent or sibling.

What are the effects of homophobic bullying?

The experience of homophobic bullying can have a serious negative impact on LGBTI young people. It can lower self-esteem and contribute to high levels of anxiety, a deep sense of isolation and depression. Victimised learners can choose silence and bottling up their feelings. They might sleep badly, have poor physical health, perform below their ability at school, stay away a lot and even drop out. Depression and loss of stability may cause these young people to turn to addictive substances and risky behaviour such as unprotected sex. Extended isolation and depression raises the risk of suicide.

Why is homophobia prevalent in our schools?

Homophobia is prevalent in schools when it is prevalent in the wider society. It readily takes hold in gender-unequal societies where stereotypes of manhood and womanhood prevail. Homophobia can flourish where 'manliness' means large, rugged, forceful and violent, and where ideal 'womanliness' is at the opposite extreme: passive, decorative, domesticated and submissive. In this context, boys who are peaceable, gentle, studious or artistic and girls who are active, independent and outspoken may be seen as uncomfortably 'different', even when they are not gay. People who are actually and openly gay may attract deep disapproval, stigma and even persecution.

Homophobia also flourishes where only 'straight' sexual activity is accepted by the state and the strongest religious groupings. Many homophobes think that their hatred or, at least, rejection of homosexuality is based on scriptural authority. Their view is that only heterosexual sexual practice is God-ordained because it is procreative (can result in children) and homosexual sex is entirely 'recreational' (focused only on pleasure), unnatural and therefore sinful. However, homosexuality is as old as society itself and many LGBTI people through the ages have made enormously productive, positive and creative contributions to society, human knowledge and culture. These opposed ideas make homophobia an extremely sensitive issue which must be handled with care and delicacy. (See Follow-up activities for this workshop, page 91.)

An important issue is that legal and religious prohibition of homosexuality, as in the days of apartheid, gives authority to homophobia. The force of this authority can last even when the law changes. The 1994 Interim Constitution of South Africa introduced a Bill of Rights, signed into law in 1996, which protects lesbians and gay men from discrimination based on their sexual orientation. However, the protection

3 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

given by the law and the Constitution may be compromised when many of those who are supposed to ensure this protection are themselves homophobic and may feel morally justified in being so. These might be people in the police force, social services, health services and other government services, as well as the church, the business sector, the education sector and people in other professions.

In this context, the attitude of educators will strongly affect whether or not homophobia prevails at school. An issue is that many educators themselves do not readily accept and include gay learners, and are therefore unwilling to take responsibility for upholding their constitutional rights to equality, human dignity and education. Such educators might directly or indirectly promote stigma by (Bhana 2012):

- harassing these learners through discriminatory joking and taunting;
- treating the gay identity of learners as irrelevant at school;
- expressing religious objections to homosexuality;
- seeing LGBTI issues as outside the curriculum, even though sexuality, life and values are included in it; and
- withholding encouragement and acceptance of LGBTI learners because they fear that parents will disapprove of a more open and inclusive approach.

How does homophobic bullying impact youth?

- Homophobic bullying is a symptom of a pervasive societal culture of homophobia and heterosexism that threatens the physical and mental health, safety and wellbeing of sexual- and gender-minority youth.
- Sexual- and gender-minority youth are not inherently at risk; it is the homophobic beliefs and behaviours of others that produce a number of risks and stressors that may negatively impact on their lives, health and educational outcomes. For example, research indicates that sexual-minority youth report more emotional and behavioural difficulties; higher symptoms of depression and externalising behaviours; more hostile peer environments and experiences of victimisation; greater rates of bullying and sexual harassment; and less social support in their family, school and peer group contexts when compared with their heterosexual peers (Williams et al. 2005).

What can educators do?

Educators can:

- · learn more about sexual orientation and related issues;
- move away from 'othering' LGBTI people and rather attempt to empathise with their experiences of life;
- remember that while LGBTI learners are different from other learners in sexual orientation, in crucial ways they are the same and need to be treated equally as people, as children and as learners;
- recognise the level of responsibility and power that educators hold with regard to LGBTI learners; and
- · question their own thinking and their possible prejudices against LGBTI people.

Workshop 3 will help in this process of developing empathy (see Topics 1–3). Topics 4 and 5 focus more on taking action on homophobic bullying at school.

Reread the basic guidelines for taking action against harassment as an educator and a school in the *Background information* in Workshop 2 (pages 51–53). These guidelines include relevant information on using a whole-school approach

to discipline learners who harass/bully others, and encouraging reporting of harassment/homophobic bullying.

Further ideas for school action on homophobic bullying

In Workshop 8, we emphasise that a whole-school approach is needed to deal effectively with gender-based violence (GBV). This applies equally to homophobic bullying and indeed to general bullying. All bullying behaviours rely on violent cultures and hate speech being accepted as 'normal' at school. A positive culture of respect and community (belonging) needs to be created at all levels of school life.

Part of this preventative strategy can be to use normal anti-bullying strategies such as these, provided by the National School Safety Framework (DBE 2014):

- Define bullying (include homophobic bullying behaviours in this definition).
- · Set up and enforce school rules and policies on bullying (include homophobic bullying).
- Assess what is happening, including the extent and nature of the bullying (When and where does it occur? Who are the targets? What do the bullying learners do and say? Who encourages them? What do the bystanders do?).
- · Form school safety committees which integrate anti-bullying into their activities.
- Provide ongoing training to school administrators, teaching staff, non-teaching staff and other school role-players on how to prevent bullying (and extend this to include specific aspects/examples of homophobic bullying).
- · Deal appropriately with bullying: apply positive disciplinary measures and get bullying learners to make reparation. Increase adult supervision in bullying hotspots.
- · Focus class time on bullying prevention where the aim is to change norms around bullying (e.g. lessons in life orientation, languages, history, etc. can focus on dealing with diversity, including sexual and gender diversity).
- Make bullying 'uncool' and make it 'cool' to help learners who are bullied: engage peer educators in this effort.

Some additional strategies schools can implement are given below:

- · Work with the Representative Council of Learners and learner clubs to involve all learners in confronting issues of discrimination, and be sure to include sexual orientation in the picture of diversity that is raised.
- Target the issue of homophobia specifically and seriously with school staff as part of staff development.
- · Involve parents in developing understanding and tolerance of diversity, including gender/sexual diversity, and building a safe and inclusive school.
- Develop an information base on LGBTI identity and homophobia prevention: build useful, positive resources to draw on during meetings and/or campaigns with all sectors of the school community.
- Involve LGBTI people (e.g. known and respected ex-learners) who can help build empathy and advocate diversity effectively.
- Involve role-players in the wider community such as the South African Police Service, health workers, social workers and local non-governmental organisations to educate learners about LGBTI issues and homophobia.



FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR

WorkShop 3

WORKSHOP LENGTH: 3 HOURS

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- · Understand what hate crimes are.
- · Dispel misconceptions about LGBTI people and their sexuality.
- Raise awareness about the levels of violence perpetrated against LGBTI people in South Africa
- Reflect on participants' own beliefs and practices in relation to homophobia and homophobic bullying.
- Recognise how expectations based on gender stereotyping are connected to homophobic bullying.
- Explore what educators can do about homophobic bullying at school.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- Define hate crimes, including the different types.
- · Define sexual identities.
- Understand the plight of LGBTI people in South Africa.
- Identify which beliefs and practices violate the rights of LGBTI people.
- Link GBV and crimes perpetrated against LGBTI people.
- Identify and implement various strategies aimed at dealing with homophobic bullying at schools.

OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- Topic 1. Defining terms and exploring examples (60 minutes)
- Topic 2. What do we know about homosexuality? (30 minutes)
- Topic 3. Looking at heterosexual privilege (15 minutes)
- Topic 4. Where to begin? (15 minutes)
- Topic 5. Standing up to homophobic bullying at school (50 minutes)

MATERIALS

- · Chalkboard/flipchart
- Chalk/markers
- · Laptop/PowerPoint presentation and projector



WORKSHOP 3 HANDOUTS HANDOUT 1 DEFINING TERMS HANDOUT 2 HOMOPHOBIC SCENARIOS HANDOUT 3A WHAT DO WE KNOW ABOUT HOMOSEXUALITY? **HANDOUT 3B SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 3A HANDOUT 4 HETEROSEXUAL PRIVILEGE QUESTIONNAIRE HANDOUT 5** WHERE TO BEGIN? HANDOUT 6 RATE YOUR SCHOOL ON THE BULLY BAROMETER





GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 3

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



Read the *Guidelines for facilitating activities focused on sensitive topics* on page 6 of this manual, which contain important advice for every workshop.

Some specific concerns for Workshop 3 are given here:

- Be prepared for heated debate. Many unexamined religious and cultural issues are likely to surface in this discussion.
- You may find it helpful to use icebreakers to reduce stress in the group.
- You may wish to allow further debate and therefore require a longer time period.
 Topics 1–3 could be presented in a morning session, for example, and Topics
 4 and 5 in the afternoon session. Note that the latter activities focus on positive actions and strategies for schools and individuals.
- If possible, invite LGBTI speakers/presenters from outside who can allay concerns and fears raised in this workshop and help build homosexual heterosexual understanding. (See page 94 for a list of useful contacts.)

LENGTH:



INTRODUCTION



NOTE:

Provide a broad overview of the workshop and, if necessary, give participants the opportunity to get to know you and the other participants.

Inform participants that this workshop covers issues which are culturally and religiously sensitive. Introduce the objectives and outcomes of the workshop. Does anything need to be negotiated? Does anything need to be changed? Once consensus has been reached, move on to defining terms.



TOPIC 1. DEFINING TERMS AND EXPLORING EXAMPLES

MATERIALS

- · Chalkboard/flipchart
- Chalk/markers
- · PowerPoint presentation
- · Handout 1. Defining terms
- · Handout 2. Homophobic scenarios



Make full use of the *Background information* to prepare for facilitating discussion of concepts and for the tasks for this topic.

Task 1. Defining terms

Brainstorming in small groups. Write the following terms on the flipchart: *sexual orientation, LGBTI, homophobia* and *homophobic bullying (gay bashing)*. Ask participants to brainstorm definitions for each term.

Report back. After participants have shared some of their definitions with the whole group, distribute Handout 1. Allow time for participants to read the handout and share their reflections; you could use a PowerPoint presentation to summarise feedback. Tell participants that the next task will look at homophobic bullying in the school context.

Task 2. Exploring examples of homophobic bullying/violence

Small group discussion. Distribute Handout 2 and refer participants to the questions on the handout.

Report back. During feedback on groups' responses to the questions, explore the causes and effects of homophobic bullying, using participants' own school environments as well as the scenarios in the handout. The next topic deals with perceptions in a systematic way.



LENGTH:



TOPIC 2. WHAT DO WE KNOW ABOUT HOMOSEXUALITY?

MATERIALS

- **Handout 3A.** What do we know about homosexuality?
- Handout 3B. Suggested responses to Handout 3A

Task. Perceptions and misconceptions



NOTE:

Read through the answers to the questionnaire beforehand to feel comfortable enough to respond to all the questions and any other issues which may be raised by participants.

Individual response. Distribute copies of Handout 3A. Participants should complete the activity by ticking the Agree or Disagree column in response to the various statements. Allow participants five minutes to answer the questionnaire.

Small group discussion. Participants can compare their answers to Handout 3A with their group; they must give reasons for their choices. Then distribute Handout 3B so groups can review their own responses in relation to the suggested ones on the handout. What new information have they learned about homosexuality? Ask each participant to make one suggestion.

Large group. Ask volunteers to describe how their attitudes and/or opinions have changed after working through this topic. The purpose of this activity is not to determine who had the 'correct' answer, but to explore how opinions have changed. Be prepared for some heated discussion.

rkshop 🥾

TOPIC 3. LOOKING AT HETEROSEXUAL PRIVILEGE

MATERIALS

· Handout 4. Heterosexual privilege questionnaire

Task. Developing empathy

Individual reflection. Distribute copies of Handout 4. Participants should complete the activity by ticking the *Yes* or *No* column. This activity raises important issues, so allow participants time for reflection and discussion after completing the questionnaire.

Participants must appreciate that the majority of gay and lesbian people would not be able to agree with most, if any, of these statements. Participants who disagree with any of these statements might be from other marginalised groups such as mixed-race couples, people from differing religious backgrounds, etc. Helping heterosexually privileged people to identify their privilege will hopefully encourage them to develop empathy and understanding towards others who experience discrimination in society.

TOPIC 4. WHERE TO BEGIN?

MATERIALS

• Handout 5. Where to begin?

Task. Reflecting on one's own beliefs and practices

Individual reflection. Distribute Handout 5. Ask individual participants to consider the questions asked, and to think carefully about their responses. At first, participants may incorrectly assume that these questions are irrelevant to their particular teaching situations, so help participants see their relevance.

Small group reflection. Organise participants who haven't worked together before into small groups. They should reflect on and compare their own beliefs and practices in relation to homophobia and homophobic bullying with the other members of the group.









TOPIC 5. STANDING UP TO HOMOPHOBIC BULLYING AT SCHOOL

MATERIALS

- Questions written up on chalkboard/flipchart/PowerPoint presentation
- · Handout 6. Rate your school on the bully barometer

Task 1. Assessing the extent of homophobic bullying in schools

Whole group. Explain that homophobic bullying is usually part of a more general bullying culture. Participants will have an opportunity to examine the extent of this culture in their own schools. Distribute Handout 6.

Pair work. Read out the extract from *Speak Out!* in Handout 6 with participants and then give pairs 5–10 minutes to rate their school on the bully barometer.

Whole group feedback. Ask pairs to share their assessment of bullying levels at their schools.

Pairs, groups or whole group. Re-focus participants on the issue of homophobia (stigma and discrimination) raised in the last item of Handout 6. Discuss these questions (written on the chalkboard/flipchart/PowerPoint presentation ahead of the workshop):

- 1. What kinds of learners at your school are targets of homophobic bullying? How are they different from other learners and from each other? How are they similar to all other learners?
- 2. What do the bullying learners do to 'gay' learners, generally? How do other learners respond when they see it happening?
- 3. What attitudes do educators have towards learners who are different (i.e. gay, lesbian, etc.)? What attitudes and values are appropriate in an educator when there are homophobic bullying and abusive situations? (Refer participants to previous activities.)



This activity will help participants place homophobic bullying in the context of general school bullying so that they can formulate practical and effective ways of dealing with it as a whole-school issue.

Task 2. Generating anti-bullying strategies for schools

Whole class. Remind participants that a bullying culture at school is the most fertile ground possible for all GBV (including homophobic bullying), since most types of sexual harassment and sexual assault are more or less extreme forms of bullying. Therefore, it is very important to work against bullying in as many specific and strategic ways as possible and to build a caring and inclusive culture instead.

Creative groups. Ask groups to develop anti-bullying strategies for their schools by suggesting positive preventive strategies in response to each of the bullying indicators in the 'bully barometer' quiz (see Task 1). Suggested strategies should also be suitable as anti-homophobic bullying strategies.

Report back. Encourage participants to share their strategies. Remind participants about the value of developing a code of conduct for the school, having a school safety team and reporting procedures, and the relevance of the anti-harassment strategies explored in Workshop 2. Strategies focused on attitude change are particularly important in this context.



- 1. While recognising the ways in which LGBTI learners are different and therefore targeted, it is vital that participants also appreciate the ways in which LGBTI learners are just like all other learners.
- 2. Encourage a range of answers from participants.
- 3. Educators might identify various negative attitudes in their schools as described in the Background information. Acknowledge this reality, but discourage indulgent elaboration on these, and instead urge participants to move on to inclusive values such as ubuntu and the constitutional rights of respect, dignity and 'the best interests of the child' as the way forward - whatever people's personal views might be.



3

SUGGESTED FOLLOW-UP ACTIVITIES

- 1. Invite LGBTI activists to your school. Form a group of key role-players from your school and community that includes members of the school management team, school governing body and representative council of learners (your school support team or school safety team would be ideal). Share your school's particular homophobia issues with the activists and ask them to help you strategise around changing homophobic mindsets and ensuring the safety of all learners at the school. Ask them to talk to learners/educators/parents.
- 2. Involve learners (including a significant representation of 'straight' learners) in developing a drama and/or songs and/or a poster campaign around issues of homophobia at school.
- 3. Similarly, engage the debating club at school with these issues and/or organise a panel discussion (this needs careful and constructive guidance, however). Help learners research and develop pro-gay positions and counterarguments to homophobic perspectives that are often raised. For example:
 - Reading what the South African Constitution says about sexual orientation in the Bill of Rights and studying all relevant rights with this in mind.
 - Identifying achievements and contributions of gay people through history.
 - Identifying and highlighting South African gay people who have made great contributions to our national life.
 - Placing anti-gay religious texts in their historical context and distinguishing between positive spiritual teachings and narrow cultural prohibitions in scripture.
 - Identifying positive, inclusive teachings in different religions practiced by learners at your school to counter anti-gay religious positions and texts.
- 4. Select suitable activities from this workshop to use in a learner workshop at school to develop awareness of homophobia, empathy for LGBTI learners and possibilities for constructive anti-bullying action.
- 5. Start a safe space for communication (e.g. a strategically placed suggestion box) where learners can share issues and problems confidentially and without fear of ridicule or harassment from peers. Encourage LGBTI learners to make use of this resource.

USEFUL RESOURCES

RESOURCES ON HOMOPHOBIA AND HOMOPHOBIC BULLYING

- Bhana, Deevia. 2012. "Understanding and Addressing Homophobia in Schools: A View from Teachers." South African Journal of Education, 32 (3): 307–318.
- Department of Basic Education. 2014a. Challenging Homophobic Bullying in Schools, Pretoria: DBE.
- Francis, Dennis and Thabo Msibi. 2011. "Teaching About Heterosexism: Challenging Homophobia in South Africa." Journal of LGBT Youth, 8 (2):
- Msibi, Thabo. 2012. "I'm Used to it Now: Experiences of Homophobia Among Queer Youth in South African Township Schools." Gender and Education, 24 (5): 515-533. Online at: http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/09540253.2011.645021.

RESOURCES ON HATE CRIMES AND GAY BASHING

- Berk, Richard A. 1990. "Thinking About Hate-Motivated Crimes." Journal of Interpersonal Violence, 5 (3): 334-349.
- Bohn, Ted R. 1984. "Homophobic Violence: Implications for Social Work Practice." Journal of Social Work and Human Sexuality, 2 (2-3): 91-112.
- Herek, Gregory M. 1992. "The Social Context of Hate Crimes: Notes on Cultural Heterosexism." In G. Herek & K. Berrill (eds.), Hate Crimes: Confronting Violence Against Lesbians and Gay Men, 89-104. Newbury Park, California: Sage Publications.

RESOURCES ON QUEER PEDAGOGY

- Britzman, Deborah P. 1995. "Is There a Queer Pedagogy? Or, Stop Reading Straight." Educational Theory, 45 (2): 151-165.
- Cady, Joseph. 1992. "Teaching Homosexual Literature as a 'Subversive' Act" in Minton, Henry I. 1992 (ed). Gay and Lesbian Studies. New York: Haworth Press.
- Harris, Simon. 1990. Lesbian and Gay Issues in the English Classroom: The Importance of Being Honest. Milton Keynes: Open University Press.

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES ON GAY AND LESBIAN ISSUES

- Cameron, Edwin and Mark Gevisser, eds. 1995. Defiant Desire: Gay and Lesbian Lives in South Africa. New York: Routledge.
- Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. 2014. National Intervention Strategy for Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender and Intersex (LGBTI) Sector.
- Luirink, Bart. 2000. Moffies: Gay Life in South Africa. Cape Town: David Philip.
- Potgieter, Cheryl and Finn C.G. Reygan. 2012. "Lesbian, Gay and Bisexual Citizenship: A Case Study as Represented in a Sample Of South African Life Orientation Textbooks." Perspectives in Education, 30(4): 39-51.



LGBTI ORGANISATIONS

ORGANISATION	AREA	CONTACT
GAUTENG		
African Men for Sexual Health and Rights (AMSHeR)	Johannesburg	011 482 4630 www.amsher.org
Forum for the Empowerment of Women (FEW)	Braamfontein	011 403 1906/1907/1035
GALA	Braamfontein	011 717 4239 www.gala.co.za
New Living Way Ministry	Kempton Park	071 326 8034 www.learntolove.co.za
OUT	Pretoria	012 430 3272 www.out.org.za
National LGBTI Health Campaign		011 027 1912
IHAWU	Kathlehong, Ekurhuleni	078 936 7725
Transgender Intersex and Intersex Africa	Pretoria, Soshanguve	transgenderintersexafrica. org.za
Vutha LGBTI	Ekurhuleni, Etwatwa	079 993 5609
1 in 9	Johannesburg	011 024 5185 oneinnine.org.za
KWAZULU-NA	TAL	
Pietermaritzburg Gay and Lesbian Network	Pietermaritzburg, Midlands	033 342 6165/033 342 6500 www.gaylesbiankzn.org
Durban Lesbian and Gay Community Health Centre	Durban	031 312 7402 outreach3@gaycentre.org.za
Deo Gloria Family Church	Durban	082 698 5332 info@deogloriakzn.org.za
WESTERN CA	\PE	
Free Gender	Khayelitsha, Cape Town	021 362 9491/321 0276 freegender.wordpress.com
Gay and Lesbian Christian Outreach	Cape Town	021 975 1636
Gender DynamiX	Athlone, Cape Town	021 633 5287 www.genderdynamix.org.za
The Inner Circle	Wynberg, Cape Town	021 761 3862/0037/4434 theinnercircle.org.za
Pride Shelter	Oranjezicht, Cape Town	021 423 2871 www.pridesheltertrust.com
Triangle Project	Mowbray, Cape Town	021 686 1475 community@triangle.co.za

ORGANISATION	AREA	CONTACT		
EASTERN CAPE				
Eastern Cape Gay and Lesbian Association (ECGLA)	Port Elizabeth	041 582 1111 www.ecgla.org.za		
Eastern Cape LGBTI	East London	083 354 8091		
I Am Gay Eastern Cape		086 722 7014 iamgay.co.za		
NORTHERN CA	NPE			
LEGB0	Kimberly	073 626 3346		
Diamond Gay and Lesbian Organisation	Kimberly	053 871 4527		
NORTHWEST				
Gays and Lesbians of Rustenburg	Rustenburg	014 592 3158		
Gay Umbrella	Mafikeng	060 383 8470		
LIMPOPO				
Vhembe Forum of LBTI	Vhembe, Musina	079 724 9948		
Limpopo OUT Pride	Sekhukhune	078 108 7717		
MPUMALANGA				
Boithato Project	Gert Sibande, Ermelo	017 811 5661		
Highveld Heroines Forum	Ermelo	076 843 9284		

WorkShop 3 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 1. DEFINING TERMS

Gender identity

The term 'gender identity' refers to how we see ourselves as male or female. Most people's gender identity is linked to the sex they are at birth, i.e. a person born male generally sees himself as a man. However, some people are different. Some men see themselves as women and some women see themselves as men. They are described as transgender. In addition, some people are born with bodies that are neither typically male nor typically female – they are intersex.

Sexual orientation

Your sexual orientation refers to the attraction you feel towards people of one sex or another (or both).

- Most people are attracted to people who are the opposite sex to themselves and they are described as heterosexual or (informally) 'straight'.
- Many people are attracted to people who are the same sex as themselves. They
 are described as homosexual or 'gay' (an informal term which is often applied to
 male homosexuals) or lesbian (for female homosexuals).
- Some people are attracted to people of both sexes: they are bisexual.

LGBTI

LGBTI is an acronym for lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex. Broadly speaking, it means people whose sexual orientation is homosexual or bisexual and whose gender identity is different from the heterosexist norm. The percentage of people who are LGBTI in any country is generally much higher than statistics suggest. Many gay and lesbian people do not 'come out' and disclose their gay identity freely because they fear discrimination.

Lesbian A woman who is sexually, physically, emotionally and romantically

attracted to another woman.

Gay A man who is sexually, physically, emotionally and romantically

attracted to another man.

Bisexual A person who is attracted to both men and women. Being

capable of having romantic, sexual, intimate feelings for, or a love relationship with someone of the same sex and/or with someone of the opposite sex. Note: being bisexual doesn't mean that the people necessarily have feelings at the same time, or have an

equal amount of attraction to both sexes.

Transgender A term for persons whose gender identity, gender expression or

behaviour does not conform to that typically associated with the

sex to which they are assigned at birth.

Intersex An atypical combination of features that usually distinguish

male from female, such as sex chromosomes, gonads, internal

reproductive organs and external genitalia.

Homophobia

This term is used to describe the irrational and extreme fear, loathing and intolerance that some people feel towards those whose sexual orientation is towards members of their own sex rather than towards members of the opposite sex. People who are homophobic feel disgust, anxiety, discomfort, fear and anger when they come into contact with homosexual people, even when they simply see homosexual people on television or think about them.

For homophobes, heterosexuality is the only natural and justifiable sexual orientation and therefore the rage, hatred and even violence they express towards homosexual people seems similarly justified to them. Many homophobes feel that this hatred is divinely sanctioned and based on scriptural authority and, therefore, morally righteous and necessary. Some psychologists believe that homophobia often expresses an inner fear of being homosexual.

Homophobic bullying ('gay bashing')

Homophobic bullying is sometimes called 'gay bashing'. However, in the school context it is better understood as bullying and discrimination directed at anyone whose sexual orientation or gender identity differs from the norm. In many of our schools, learners are marginalised if their physical characteristics or behaviour raise questions in others about their sex and gender.

Homophobic discrimination occurs in most cultures, and might take any of the following forms:

- **Verbal abuse** name-calling, abusive language about the person's appearance and behaviour, public humiliation, threats of physical violence.
- Physical abuse beatings, torture, rape, throwing people out of their homes without support, killing them.
- **Property crimes** damaging or destroying a gay person's property.
- Institutional abuse laws against homosexual activity, homophobic television and radio programmes, hate literature and education systems that exclude or condemn homosexuality.

In our schools, LGBTI learners are generally bullied/harassed similarly to other marginalised learners: the abuse may be verbal, physical or emotional. It can include name-calling, following and taunting or threatening, cyberbullying and beating up. It may also take the extreme form of 'corrective' rape, intended to show a lesbian how to be a 'real woman', or to show a male gay person how a 'real' man behaves.

Homophobic bullying at school, like bullying in general, is often repeated and relentless and can have tragic outcomes such as suicide. It might target not only learners but also educators who are (or are perceived to be) LGBTI, as well as learners who have an LGBTI parent or sibling.



3 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 2. HOMOPHOBIC SCENARIOS

Read the two scenarios in this handout and answer the following questions about each scenario:

- 1. What forms of homophobic bullying/violence can you identify?
- 2. Do homophobic practices and attitudes like these occur in your own school? Are there other kinds of homophobic bullying at your school? Briefly describe examples.
- 3. In your view, why does homophobic bullying/violence take place?
- 4. What effect does it have on the people who are targeted?
- 5. How have these kinds of incidents and practices been dealt with at your school?

Scenario 1

[Adapted from a newspaper report: source unknown]

Learners at a school in northern KwaZulu-Natal who were labelled 'spirits of the devil' said they were put in a separate class because of their sexual orientation. Although school authorities said 'there are no gays' at the school, a 19-year-old Grade 12 learner said the educators made life in the classroom unbearable.

"At one stage we were put in a separate class because everyone knew we were gay and did not like us for that. Educators told us they could not teach us because we were the spirits of the devil and because they were Christians. Sometimes they would just ignore us if we wanted to contribute in class. It was so painful that sometimes I felt like leaving school. I just hated school because I could not concentrate and I felt unwanted," the learner said.

He said some of his gay friends had left school because they could not handle the situation.

Scenario 2

Zinzi is a tall, strong 16-year-old learner in Grade 10 at a large Soweto high school. She is reserved in manner, a good athlete and also a high achiever in class. She recently made friends with a new learner, Naledi, a bubbly and lively girl in Grade 11. They both read a lot and met at the local library. They became close friends surprisingly quickly – for Zinzi – and would spend time together after school. Suddenly, one day when they were alone together doing their homework at Naledi's house, Naledi ran up to Zinzi and kissed her lovingly. Zinzi had never been interested in dating boys, and realised at that moment that she was in love with Naledi. A steady relationship has grown between them.

Although Zinzi is a reserved person, Naledi is not. She shows her love for Zinzi quite openly at school, although not in a particularly sexual manner, taking her hand and giving her hugs. Zinzi is delighted at this and people have started to notice her untypically eager responsiveness. Thabo, a learner who is interested in Naledi, is watching.

One day, Zinzi is leaving school alone late after athletics practice. Three guys jump out at her as she crosses an empty park near her home. They push her into some bushes and rape her. Through stunned shock, fear, humiliation and pain, she recognises Thabo's voice: "Well, who's the man, now? Seems she's a woman after all, guys — or we showed her that she was. Perhaps she'll stop stealing our meat, after this."

HANDOUT 3A. WHAT DO WE KNOW ABOUT **HOMOSEXUALITY?**

Read each statement and decide if it is *True* or *False*. Tick the appropriate column.

STATEMENTS	TRUE	FALSE
 Most gays and lesbians can be identified by their mannerisms, dress and appearance because one partner is always 'male' and the other is 'female'. 		
2. All homosexual men are paedophiles.		
3. Homosexuality is an emotional illness.		
All lesbian and gay people secretly want to change so as to become heterosexual.		
5. Acting like a 'sissy' or a 'tomboy' causes homosexuality.		
6. Lesbians and gay men gravitate towards certain occupations.		
7. Homosexuality is un-African.		
8. Gay and lesbian parents will raise gay or lesbian children.		
9. Gay and lesbian people are sinful.		
10. Homosexuality has always existed in the world.		
11. The majority of child molesters are heterosexual men whose victims are young girls.		
12. Homosexual educators can cause learners to become homosexual.		





HANDOUT 3B. SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 3A



1. False

Media stereotypes of gay men and lesbians have led to this misconception. In reality, it is impossible to 'spot' homosexual people in this way. In any relationship, certain tasks/roles fall to the person who most enjoys doing them, but they need not be drawn along these lines. Some homosexual couples have taken on roles more commonly linked to either masculinity or femininity, but this does not mean that one is 'male' and the other 'female'.

2. False

This is a harmful belief. Most paedophiles are heterosexual men.

3. False

Homosexuality is one of the various forms of human sexual response and expression. Because homophobia is so pervasive, many homosexual people are led to believe that they are ill and need to be cured.

4. False

Many homosexuals celebrate who and what they are. Social pressure – from narrowly heterosexual perspectives and homophobia – often forces lesbian and gay people into a heterosexual lifestyle, although this does psychological and emotional harm to them. However, some people believe that all expressions of sexuality are learned behaviour, and that if there was no pressure to be heterosexual, many people would not be as distinctly homosexual or heterosexual as they are now.

5. False

There is no definitive evidence which points to how homosexuality originates in a person. Furthermore, the terms 'sissy' and 'tomboy' result from gender stereotyping. Not all girls behave in traditionally feminine ways and not all boys behave in traditionally masculine ways, nor should they have to.

6. False

This perception is also related to media representation of gay men and lesbians.

7. False

Homosexuality exists in African culture, as in all other cultures. Some historical revisionists have attempted to blame European colonialism for importing homosexuality into Africa, but a great deal of academic research indicates that this is not the case.

8. False

Gay and lesbian parents are as likely or unlikely to raise homosexual children as are heterosexual parents.

9. False

Gay and lesbian people are as likely or unlikely to be sinful as are heterosexual people. Many homosexual people have abandoned orthodox religion because they are discriminated against. Many gay and lesbian church congregations exist and many religious groups are starting to welcome gay and lesbian people.

10. True

There is a great deal of undisputed evidence of this.

11. True

Child molestation statistics indicate that an overwhelmingly high proportion of child abuse is perpetrated by heterosexual men.

12. False

People cannot cause others to become homosexual. What homosexual educators can do, though, is try to create a safe space in schools where gay and lesbian learners can acknowledge their sexuality.

HANDOUT 4. HETEROSEXUAL PRIVILEGE QUESTIONNAIRE

Read each statement and decide Yes or No. Tick the appropriate column.

STATEMENT	YES	NO
 If I get involved in a new relationship or if my relationship breaks up, I can discuss this freely with my colleagues at work or with my fellow churchgoers. 		
My partner and I can go shopping together and can be overheard deciding what we need for our home without fear of being sneered at or harassed.		
3. I can kiss my partner goodbye at the bus stop or airport, confident that onlookers will either ignore us or smile understandingly.		
4. I can be sure that any neighbours my partner and I ever have will be neutral or friendly towards us.		
5. I would be able to invite anyone at all to a wedding or commitment ceremony my partner and I might wish to hold.		
6. If I had a seriously ill partner, he/she would be admitted without question to the intensive care unit of the hospital.		
7. My partner and I would automatically be regarded as next of kin.		
Stories and pictures of families like ours are depicted in mainstream children's books.		
I can always find an appropriate card for my partner for celebrations such as anniversaries.		
10. If I experience violence on the street, it will not be because I am holding hands with my partner.		
11. We can book a double bed in a hotel without thinking about it.		
12. My partner can legally adopt my children.		
13. My partner can attend all functions with me, such as school and church dances, office parties, etc.		







HANDOUT 5. WHERE TO BEGIN?



Use the following questions to explore specific teaching challenges you may have regarding sexual orientation and diversity generally.

1.	How do I feel about having learners who are lesbian or gay in my classroom?	Am I comfortable with LGBTI people, generally? Give reasons.
2.	What type of diversity makes me most uncomfortable? With what type of diversity am I most comfortable?	
_		Which values do I have which I think are also universally important?
3.	What do I expect from my learners? Do they differ: • from culture to culture?	
	 from colour to colour? according to ability or disability? depending on sexual orientation? from male to female? according to socioeconomic class? 	How would I respond if one of my learners made a racial or sexist comment, or presented work that contained racist or sexist statements?
		Would I respond differently to a colleague or figure of authority who demonstrated homophobic behaviour?
4.	How does it affect me as a straight/gay educator to have lesbian/gay learners in my classroom?	
_		Would I respond differently if one of my learners made a homophobic comment or presented schoolwork which contained homophobic statements? Give reasons for your answer.
5. —	How do I feel about having a classroom with very little diversity?	
_		
6.	What are the benefits of having a classroom with LGBTI learners?	Learners in my school or classroom all appear to be heterosexual. Do I consider this to be positive, or negative?

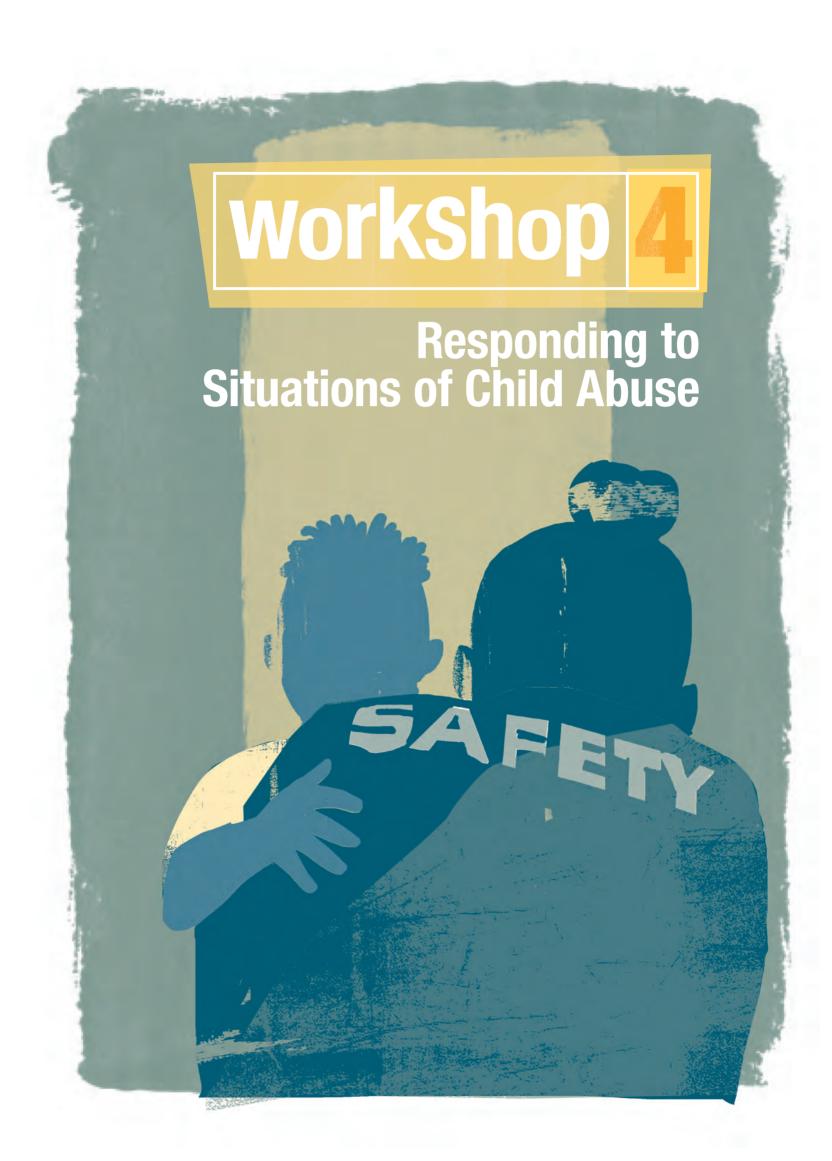
HANDOUT 6. RATE YOUR SCHOOL ON THE BULLY BAROMETER



Below is advice and a learner quiz from the publication Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse (DBE 2013). Read the extract and work with a partner to complete the quiz about your own school.

As you know, it is not only adults who abuse their peers. This happens in marbullying or sexting to rape and assault beople unsafe and vulnerable in many	ny different ways - from he	
pullying or sexting to rape and assault		אטטווקטוווכ
DK! Take action now and Speak Out o	ways, including sexually	ure makes v. <mark>It is not</mark>
Rate yourself Do you treat others	- 2-1	
who walks all over others and alw	ays wants your own wa	y?
Tick the box next to each statement below (that applies to your school) and then check	Pate your cohool on	S. P. S.
your results. You often see bullying at school.	Rate your school on the bully barometer	
Lots of people gather to watch fights and bullying.	Great! Your school	No ticks
Bullying usually continues until a teacher stops it.	seems to be bully-free	IICKS
Some kids get bullied repeatedly.	There could be a problem: you have	
When one person starts bullying, others join in. People who bully are quite popular as to be	the beginnings of a bullying culture	One
People who bully are quite popular or hold leadership positions.		One tick
People who bully are quite popular or hold leadership positions. Some teachers are bullies.	bullying culture Bullying is part of life	
People who bully are quite popular or hold leadership positions. Some teachers are bullies. Older kids bully younger kids who are new at school.	bullying culture	tick More
People who bully are quite popular or hold leadership positions. Some teachers are bullies. Older kids bully younger kids who are new at school. Boys bully girls sexually with things they say, movements or touching. This happens of	bullying culture Bullying is part of life	tick
People who bully are quite popular or hold leadership positions. Some teachers are bullies. Older kids bully younger kids who are new at school. Boys bully girls sexually with things they say, movements or touching. This happens at school or on the way to school. There are places in the school where you page.	bullying culture Bullying is part of life at your school Oh no! Your school	tick More than
People who bully are quite popular or hold leadership positions. Some teachers are bullies. Older kids bully younger kids who are new at school. Boys bully girls sexually with things they say, movements or touching. This happens at school or on the way to school.	bullying culture Bullying is part of life at your school	tick More than





4 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

In addition to this Background information, facilitators should read the Background information on genderbased violence (page 16) before conducting Workshop 4.

What is child abuse?

Abuse in relation to a child means any form of harm or ill-treatment deliberately inflicted on a child. It includes:

- assaulting a child or inflicting any other form of deliberate injury to a child;
- sexually abusing a child or allowing a child to be sexually abused;
- · bullying by another child;
- a labour practice that exploits a child; or
- exposing or subjecting a child to behaviour that may harm the child psychologically or emotionally.

The Children's Act 38 of 2005 defines neglect as 'failure in the exercise of parental responsibilities to provide for the child's basic physical, intellectual, emotional or social needs'. At least one in four children in South Africa will become a victim of some form of abuse in his/her lifetime: physical abuse in the home; lack of care and supervision; emotional abuse; labour exploitation; sexual exploitation; or rape and abuse at school. Sexual abuse of young children and adolescents is widespread.

Adults are the most frequent perpetrators of child sexual abuse, but it is increasingly clear that many children and adolescents also abuse younger children sexually.

In what context does child sexual abuse occur?

Child sexual abuse occurs worldwide across all social, economic and cultural groups. Incest or intra-familial sexual abuse is the most common form of child sexual abuse and can range from fondling to intercourse. In South Africa, incest constitutes 80 per cent of all child sexual abuse cases and is most commonly perpetrated by fathers, stepfathers or some other father figure. Mother—son, brother—sister and father—son incest can also occur.

Extra-familial sexual abuse, i.e. abusive behaviour where non-family members are the perpetrators, is also common. Perpetrators might be family friends, school peers, teachers, members of the clergy and (less commonly) strangers. Quite often, they are also well-known and respected members of a community. This means that some parents and other adults find it hard to believe that the child who complains is telling the truth. Clearly, an abuser who is known to the child is committing an extremely serious violation of that child's trust. The 2005 National Youth Victimisation Survey found that 88 per cent of sexual assault victims knew their perpetrator; 29 per cent of perpetrators were friends or acquaintances of the victim and 11 per cent were relatives or household members (Leoshut and Burton 2006). The 2008 National Youth Lifestyle Study found that 24 per cent of the sexual assaults reported by young people occurred in their homes (Leoshut 2009).

Both girls and boys experience child sexual abuse. A 2008 National Youth Victimisation Survey found that in primary schools more boys (2.5 per cent) than girls (0.2 per cent) reported sexual abuse. However, in secondary schools, girls reported much higher levels of abuse (4.8 per cent) than boys (2.5 per cent) (Burton 2008). Overall and across different countries, girls experience this two to three times more frequently than boys. In South Africa, victims range in age from 3 months to 18 years, with the average age (of reported cases) being approximately 5–7 years.

About 21 per cent (one in five) of sexual assault cases in South Africa occur at school. A quarter (25 per cent) of primary school learners who reported assault had experienced it twice, while 22 per cent experienced it three times. Of the secondary learners who reported, 19 per cent had experienced sexual assault twice, while a third (33.8 per cent) had had three experiences (Burton 2008). Peers at school were perpetrators in 61 per cent of cases of unwanted touching and in 62 per cent of cases of unwanted sexual intercourse (Madu and Peltzer 2001). However, another national study found that educators made up 33 per cent of the perpetrators of rape (Jewkes et al. 2002).

Why does child sexual abuse occur?

There are various misconceptions about the causes of child sexual abuse in South Africa. The startlingly high prevalence of child abuse reflects deep social problems that are hard for us to confront, as individuals, families, communities and schools, and as a nation. People, therefore, often look for 'convenient' explanations. A common misconception is that abusers are psychologically disturbed or intellectually disabled, but such explanations account for very few cases indeed.

As already mentioned, child sexual abuse is mainly about the abuse of an adult's power, authority and responsibility. The power differences between adults and children make it extremely difficult for many children to say no to adults or to avoid abusive situations. This is increased when the abuser is a parent, particularly a father figure. In many families the father is viewed as the head of the household, holding unquestionable power over his wife and children. Many fathers maintain power by threats or acts of violence. Parents also may see their children as their property, and feel they have a right to control and raise them as they wish, without interference from outsiders. Furthermore, children are commonly expected to obey their parent's wishes unquestioningly.

Children are therefore vulnerable in family structures where they are inherently powerless. Girl children are particularly vulnerable in a society where males take it as their right to own and control the lives of women as well as children. In social circumstances where violence has become 'normal', many men and boys will use their sexuality as well as their aggression to demonstrate their power and dominance over women and girls. This means that in our society sexual abuse, even incestuous abuse of girl children and the shocking rape of very young girl children, is not a strange and exceptional phenomenon that is perpetrated only by the mentally ill. The necessary ingredients for these incidents are there in our violent, sexualised and gender-unequal society - our present culture of aggression and domination.

As discussed earlier in this workshop manual, socioeconomic factors like poverty and unemployment fuel anxiety, frustration and aggression in our communities. 'Survival sex' - where parents exploit their own children for their family to survive (and which often involves children as young as 6 or 7 years) - needs to be seen against this background. Other forms of transactional sex relationships (often accepted by girls' parents because of the financial benefits) also fall into this category. This is not to condone parents' exploitation of their children and their neglect of their children's interests. However, it reminds us of the need to tackle the social problems that enable the abuse.

When we educate groups about child sexual abuse, we need to be aware of various misconceptions that impact on the prevalence of child sexual abuse. One such idea is that AIDS can be cured if an infected person has sex with a virgin. With the high incidence of HIV and AIDS in South African communities, this can increase the vulnerability of young girls to sexual abuse, though it is not clear whether it has actually been a significant causal factor. Another misconception that is common in teenage communities in particular is that not having sex is bad for your mental health.

What are the signs and effects of child abuse?

Some of the immediate consequences of abuse include depression, feelings of guilt, withdrawal, acting out, lowered self-esteem, phobias, nightmares, bed-wetting, refusing to go to school and refusing to be left alone with individuals, cutting one's body, attempted suicide, a sense of powerlessness and distrust of individuals.

Adolescent pregnancy, sexually transmitted diseases, unusual or excessive itching of the genitals or anal area and bleeding around the vagina or rectum (bedclothes may be stained) are also frequent consequences of child sexual abuse. The effects of child sexual abuse can persist well into adulthood for some individuals. Long-term effects can include depression, substance addiction (drugs and alcohol), problems relating sexually to partners, eating disorders, problems associated with trust, self-blame and powerlessness.

Another effect is that violence becomes normalised in young children's lives. This was evident in a pre-school where children were playing 'hit me, hit me' and 'rape me, rape me' (SAHRC 2008). In such circumstances, girls learn early that submission is a survival skill.

If teachers and parents do not deal appropriately with GBV by young boys and girls in early childhood and primary schools, these learners will continue to perceive GBV as appropriate behaviour throughout their lives. For boys in particular, behaviour patterns which reflect 'normalised' masculine violence and aggression against women and girls must be interrupted in early childhood.

Understanding the law on child sexual abuse

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act (also called the Sexual Offences Act) of 2007 reflects a clear intention to protect children from sexual predators, as reflected in the table on page 109, together with information about the Child Justice Act 75 of 2008 and the Children's Act 35 of 2005 that seek to protect children not only as victims or survivors of child abuse but also when they find themselves in conflict with the law.

The Act also deals with the problem that children and teenagers may appear to consent to abusive sexual acts because of the power gap between child and adult or child and older child. Children tend to believe adults – do what they ask and seek to please them. They are not yet able to give clear and independent consent. Many sexual predators exploit children's need for attention and affection to gain their trust and compliance. They then begin to abuse them.

Intergenerational relationships fall within this picture. Although teenage girls may appear tough, confident and sexually provocative, many of them (especially if they have had little parental care) do not yet have an independent identity and value system from which they can make sound choices. 'Sugar daddies' and 'sugar mommies' (sometimes educators) exploit the material needs of poor families and the low status of young girls in their families; but they also play on the girls' vulnerability and immaturity. They know that these children might easily respond to short-term material attractions (Prinsloo 2006).

Laws concerned with child sexual abuse

NAME OF THE ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
Child Justice Act 75	2008	Child means any person under the age of 18 years and, in certain circumstances, means a person who is 18 years or older but under the age of 21.
		Child justice court means any court provided for in the Criminal Procedure Act, dealing with the bail application, plea, trial or sentencing of a child.
		Minimum age of criminal capacity
		A child who commits an offence while under the age of 10 years does not have criminal capacity and cannot be prosecuted for that offence.
		A child who is 10 years or older but under the age of 14 years and who commits an offence is presumed to lack criminal capacity, unless the State proves that he or she has criminal capacity.
		Arrest of a child
		A child may not be arrested for an offence referred to in Schedule 1, unless there are compelling reasons justifying the arrest.
Children's Act 38 of 2005, amended 2007	2007	Abuse, in relation to a child, means "any form of harm or ill-treatment deliberately inflicted on a child, and includes: (a) assaulting a child or inflicting any other form of deliberate injury to a child; (b) sexually abusing a child or allowing a child to be sexually abused; (c) bullying by another child; (d) a labour practice that exploits a child; or (e) exposing or subjecting a child to behaviour that may harm the child psychologically or emotionally". Abandoned, in relation to a child, means a child who: (a) has obviously been deserted by the parent, guardian or caregiver; or (b) has, for no apparent reason, had no contact with the parent, guardian, or caregiver for a period of at least three months. Child means a person under the age of 18 years. Child labour means work by a child which (a) is exploitative, hazardous or otherwise inappropriate for a person of that age; and (b) places at risk the child's well-being, education, physical or mental health, or spiritual, moral, emotional or social development. Neglect, in relation to a child, means a failure in the exercise of parental responsibilities to provide for the child's basic physical, intellectual, emotional or social needs.

NAME OF THE ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
Children's Act 38 of 2005, amended	2007	Exploitation, in relation to a child, includes all forms of slavery or practices similar to slavery, including debt bondage or forced marriage; sexual exploitation; servitude; forced labour or services; child labour; and the removal of body parts.
2007 (cont.)		Commercial sexual exploitation, in relation to a child, means (a) the procurement of a child to perform sexual activities for financial or other reward, including acts of prostitution or pornography, irrespective of whether that reward is claimed by, payable to or shared with the procurer, the child, the parent or caregiver of the child, or any other person; or (b) trafficking in a child for use in sexual activities, including prostitution or pornography.
		Sexual abuse, in relation to a child, means (a) sexually molesting or assaulting a child or allowing a child to be sexually molested or assaulted; (b) assauraging indusing or farsing a child to be used for the sexual gratification of another.
		 (b) encouraging, inducing or forcing a child to be used for the sexual gratification of another person; (c) using a child in or deliberately exposing a child to sexual activities or pornography; or (d) procuring or allowing a child to be procured for commercial sexual exploitation or in any way participating or assisting in the commercial sexual exploitation of a child.
Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act (also called the Sexual Offences Act)	2007	 Sexual penetration Any act which causes penetration to any extent whatsoever by genital organs of one person into or beyond the genital organs, anus or mouth of another person; Any other part of the body of one person or any object including any part of the body of an animal, into or beyond the genital organs or anus or another person; The genital organs of an animal, into or beyond the mouth of another person. Sexual violation Any act which causes direct or indirect contact between: the genital organs or anus of one person or in the case of a female, her breasts and any part of the body of another person or an animal or any object, including any object resembling or representing the genital organs or anus of a person or an animal. the mouth of one person and the genital organs or anus of another person or in the case of a female, her breasts; the mouth of another person; any other part of another person, which could be used in an act of sexual penetration, cause sexual arousal or stimulation or be sexually arouse or stimulated thereby; any object resembling the genital organs, anus of person or animal or mouth or female breast; the mouth of the complainant and genital organs or anus of an animal. Masturbation of one person by another person; Insertion of any object resembling or representing the genital organs of a person or animal, into or beyond the mouth of another person. Statutory rape – an act of sexual penetration with a child despite the child's consent. Age of consent: 0–11 years cannot consent.
		 0-11 years cannot consent. 12-15 years - may consent to someone who is not more than two years older than the consenting party. 16 years - age of consent.
		Sexual exploitation of children
		Unlawful and intentional engaging a child with or without consent for financial or other reward, favour or compensation to the child or a third person, for purposes of engaging in a sexual act, whether committed or not, or committing a sexual act.

NAME OF THE ACT	YEAR	PROVISIONS
Criminal Law (Sexual Offences	2007	Sexual grooming • Preparing or making a child ready to engage in a sexual act (could be showing the child pornography, supplies or displays an article, publication or film).
and Related Matters) Amendment Act (also		Using children for or benefitting from child pornography • Unlawful and intentional use of children for creating, making or producing child pornography. Compelling or causing children to witness sexual acts, sexual offences or self masturbation
called the Sexual Offences Act) (cont.)	es Act)	 Intentionally compelling a child to watch commission of sexual offences. Exposure of genital organs, anus and female breasts to children Unlawful and intentional exposure of genital organs, anus or female breasts to children whether for sexual gratification or not. Exception – legitimate cultural practice.

What about reporting of child sexual abuse?

As might be expected, child sexual abuse is very badly under-reported, even by adolescents. It is estimated that the 28,128 sexual offences against children under 18 years that were reported to the police in 2010 were only about one-ninth of the actual cases (South African Police Services 2010/2011). The National School Violence Study of 2012 found that only 61.7 per cent of cases were reported, suggesting that close to 40 per cent of sexual assaults occurring at schools go unreported. Learners most often told educators about sexual assaults (49.7 per cent). They were less likely to inform their parents (13.7 per cent) or a sibling (1.6 per cent) or other family members (1.1 per cent), but nearly a third (31.1 per cent) of sexual assault victims chose to inform their friends about their experience rather than an adult. Generally, perpetrators strongly urge/order children not to tell – under threat of harm to themselves or their families, or as 'our secret'.

Although our laws might seek to protect our children, this protection is meaningless unless the laws are understood, respected and applied by our citizens and our institutions. Reporting sexual abuse is absolutely crucial: once prosecutions increase, a clear message is sent to perpetrators that these acts will not be tolerated. Educators are obliged by law to report suspected child abuse.

Although sexual violation is reported more than sexual harassment, it is well known that rape and other forms of sexual crimes against children are massively underreported around the world and in South Africa in particular.

Why does this failure to report occur? The experience of rape raises feelings of intense traumatic distress, defilement and shame, and the horror of privacy is utterly violated. Friends and family often reinforce the sense of shame and may suggest the abuse was invited by the way the survivor was dressed, their behaviour or the company and location they chose to socialise or walk in. It is indicated or implied that others will know this too, will suspect consent, will now see the person as 'soiled goods', and so on. To expose the abuse would be like revealing a terrible personal or family secret - rather take a bath, calm down, deny or cover up the experience. However, reporting means telling more people - usually strangers - about the experience, with further loss of privacy (the medical examination) and possible secondary abuse or insensitive treatment by poorly trained or unprofessional police, medical personnel or social workers.



4 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Support for survivors reporting sexual abuse, especially if they are children, is therefore critically important. Their rights need to be upheld as far as possible and must include absolute confidentiality; counselling; privacy during interviewing; a female interviewing officer; the support of a trusted adult; careful and considerate medical examination and treatment; and copies of their statement. Similarly, it is vital that the progress of the case is monitored.



Some of the handouts for this workshop (taken from *Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse*) set out simple reporting procedures for learners and educators to follow.

What can educators do?

Early childhood educators in particular, because they spend so much time with children, are in a position to notice changes in behaviour, or bruising and bleeding. For example, a young child who is sexually abused by peers, older children or adults on the way to school might show clear discomfort and/or difficulty walking or sitting. Educators are also often the first people in whom young children and adolescents confide their experiences of abuse. It is crucially important that educators:

- Believe children who disclose abuse, though it may be difficult to accept that a
 certain person is an abuser or that there was abuse. Disclosing abuse can be
 very difficult for children. They need to be listened to and believed.
- Keep simple, carefully dated notes (document cases) about changes in children's behaviour, things they say, etc. These may be needed as evidence in court.
- Reassure the child that speaking up about the abuse was important and that they will do what they can to find someone to help. Educators should not make promises they can't keep.
- Reassure the child that the abuse is not his/her fault. Many children believe that they somehow contributed to the abuse or should have been able to prevent it.
- Remain aware of their own relationships with children and adolescents and their own possible abuse of power and status in these contexts.
- Operate as advocates for the rights of young children, who are often denied a voice, to be safe from violence and free from oppression.
- Support learners who are pregnant as a result of abuse. These learners often suffer the dual burden of the abuse itself and the stigma/blame that pregnant teenagers suffer at school. Encourage them to continue their schooling and realise their right to education.
- Intervene and appropriately deal with abusive behaviour in which children engage, including GBV and other forms of sexual violence.
- Report colleagues who abuse learners. Educators are obliged to do so by law.

What can schools do?

Many incidents of sexual abuse take place at school, and abuse that learners suffer at home or in the community may result in no intervention if the school does not take action. Schools are well placed to establish strong links with the police, clinics and hospitals, social workers and other relevant government or non-governmental organisation role-players who can help the school report, investigate and prosecute cases, support and counsel abused learners and raise awareness amongst educators and learners. The multi-sectoral approach has had good results in many

school communities. For example, support is important when abusers are family members and/or also breadwinners or contributors to the family's material needs. These situations are delicate and potentially devastating if appropriate support is unavailable.

Similarly, school management needs to act promptly when an abused learner has to face the learner-perpetrator or teacher-perpetrator at school every day. Internal disciplinary processes need to function properly. In cases that call for expulsion of a learner or dismissal of an educator, there must be prompt and decisive communication with the provincial head of department and the South African Council of Educators. Each school should have a team of designated educators to deal with cases of sexual abuse and harassment. An effective school safety team or school-based support team can help report cases and build excellent support networks and corrective mechanisms. School management can also contribute usefully to developing school policy on sexual abuse and school and classroom codes of conduct.

Even if a school does not have an effective support team and established multisectoral links, a committed life orientation educator can ensure that he/she has a good knowledge of reporting procedures, some counselling skills, effective ideas for education and classroom management, and a good network of contacts for support locally. The support of a caring educator can make a considerable difference to the life of a child who has experienced sexual abuse.

FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR

WorkShop 4

WORKSHOP LENGTH: 3 HOURS

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- Gain an understanding of various forms of violence against children, including sexual violence.
- · Develop an awareness of the factors contributing to child abuse.
- Investigate misconceptions often associated with child abuse.
- Examine some of the indicators associated with abused children.
- Explore some of the effects of child sexual abuse.
- Become familiar with reporting procedures for child abuse.
- Develop capacity to respond to varied cases of child abuse.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- · Define the various forms of violence against children.
- Understand factors that contribute to child abuse.
- Understand the misconceptions associated with child abuse.
- Identify indicators of child abuse in their schools and examine measures that can be employed to address child abuse.

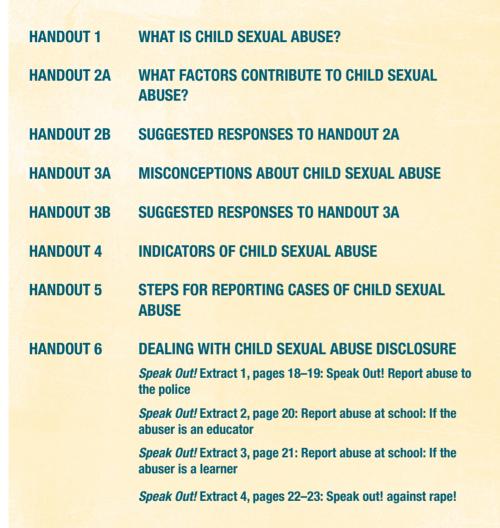
OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- Topic 1. What is child sexual abuse? (20 minutes)
- Topic 2. Factors contributing to child sexual abuse (30 minutes)
- Topic 3. Misconceptions about child sexual abuse (10 minutes)
- Topic 4. Indicators of child sexual abuse (10 minutes)
- Topic 5. The effects of sexual abuse on children, communities and society (20 minutes)
- Topic 6. Procedures for dealing with cases of learner sexual abuse (30 minutes)
- Topic 7. Responding to learner sexual abuse scenarios (40 minutes)
- Closing activity (10 minutes)

MATERIALS

- · Chalkboard/flipchart
- Chalk/markers
- · Large sheets of paper
- · Masking tape or pins/Prestik®

WORKSHOP 3 HANDOUTS







GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 4

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



Read *Background information* in Workshop 1 which contains important advice for most of the workshops in this manual. Some specific concerns for Workshop 4 are:

- Educators might wish to discuss cases of abuse which have occurred in their own schools. However, this must be done very carefully so that people's identities are not revealed. A learner who has confided in an educator needs to trust that this information will not be divulged to other educators, learners or parents, but if the learner faces the risk of further abuse, then the learner needs to know that other people will have to be informed to provide assistance.
- Workshop 4 is a key workshop and therefore longer than average. Divide up the
 activities over a day or four-hour long session that allows for tea/lunch. Topics 1–5
 focus on understanding sexual abuse, while Topics 6 and 7 are longer and focus
 more on taking action at school.

LENGTH: 10 MINUTES

INTRODUCTION

Provide an overview of the workshop and, if necessary, give participants the opportunity to introduce themselves to you and the group. Then outline the objectives and workshop agenda more specifically, and (if relevant) explain why you have arranged more time for this workshop.

Emphasise that child sexual abuse is a very emotional issue that may be difficult for some people to deal with. If anyone needs to have time out at any stage, he/she should feel free to leave the workshop for a short time.

TOPIC 1. WHAT IS CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE?

MATERIALS

- · Flipchart and markers for participants
- PowerPoint
- Prestik®
- · Handout 1. What is child sexual abuse?

Task. Defining and analysing child sexual abuse

Brainstorm. Ask participants: *What is child sexual abuse?* Record all contributions on the flipchart, eliciting the differences between extra-familial and intra-familial child sexual abuse. Then ask for examples of situations or incidents that could be classed as child sexual abuse, indicating who might be the perpetrators in each case.

Whole class discussion. After participants have exhausted their examples, examine the suggested behaviours and ask participants:

- Who are targeted most often, boys or girls? Or are they equally affected?
- Would each behaviour be extra-familial or intra-familial? Could it be either/both?
- What specific aspects of child abuse do laws need to respond to in order to make perpetrators accountable and ensure that children are protected?

Facilitator input. Distribute Handout 1 which will be an important reference for participants in the future. Summarise child sexual abuse by referring to the handout and the *Background information* on a flipchart or in a PowerPoint presentation. Emphasise the particularly exploitative nature of child sexual abuse by an adult (or an older child), and discuss how the law responds.







TOPIC 2. FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

MATERIALS

- Handout 2A. What factors contribute to child sexual abuse?
- Handout 2B. Suggested responses to Handout 2A

Task. Identifying factors contributing to child sexual abuse

Small group brainstorm. Organise groups of two or three people and distribute Handout 2A to participants. Give groups 15 minutes to brainstorm possible examples of factors under the five broad headings on the handout. If the participants need direction, use some of the examples on Handout 2B but do not distribute it at this point.

Report back. Ask one group to share their suggestions, and other groups can contribute additional examples. When the groups have exhausted their ideas in each of the categories, distribute Handout 2B.

Go through the examples on the handout. Allow 15 minutes for the report-back, which should include some discussion on the examples given.

workshop ___

TOPIC 3. MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

MATERIALS

- Handout 3A. Misconceptions about child sexual abuse
- · Handout 3B. Suggested responses to Handout 3A

Task. What are the misconceptions?

Individual and small groups. Distribute Handout 3A. Give individual participants a few minutes to complete the activity. In small groups (2–3 people), participants can compare their answers with other group members.

Report back. Bring the whole group back together and have a brief discussion about the misconceptions before distributing Handout 3B. Participants can now review their suggested answers in relation to the research and statistics. What misconceptions are common among participants? What new information has encouraged participants to change their misconceptions?

TOPIC 4. INDICATORS OF CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Markers
- · Handout 4. Indicators of child sexual abuse

Task. What are the indicators of child sexual abuse?

Brainstorm. Lead a brainstorming session around the indicators of child sexual abuse. Note all the contributions on the flipchart. Examples of indicators can be placed under three headings: (a) Physical, (b) Emotional and (c) Behavioural. When participants have exhausted their suggestions, distribute Handout 4. Highlight and discuss the indicators which participants have not identified yet.

Remember to point out that there is often more than one indicator of sexual abuse operating at any given time and that sexual abuse is frequently accompanied by other kinds of emotional abuse.







LENGTH:

20
MINUTES

TOPIC 5. THE EFFECTS OF SEXUAL ABUSE ON CHILDREN, COMMUNITIES AND SOCIETY

MATERIALS

- · Coloured markers/coloured chalk
- · Large sheets of paper
- Flipchart paper (divide the flipchart into three sections, and give each section a heading: Children, Communities and Society)
- · PowerPoint presentation/chalkboard

Task. What are the effects of child sexual abuse?

Brainstorm in pairs. Participants should suggest the short- and long-term effects of child sexual abuse on children, communities and society at large.

Report back. Bring participants back into the large group and ask for examples for each of the three sections. List suggestions on the flipchart under the appropriate headings, allowing for some discussion around the issues. Identify a volunteer to write the answers onto a large sheet which can be viewed later.

Facilitator input/PowerPoint presentation. Remember to raise the following points from the *Background information* to this workshop:

- The extent to which the effects of abuse vary across individual survivors.
- · The violation of trust.
- The implications for children's health: child sexual abuse is associated with sexually transmitted diseases and HIV and AIDS.
- The normalisation of violence in children's lives (e.g. children playing 'hit me, hit me' and 'rape me, rape me' at school – SAHRC 2008) which reinforces the idea that this is a female's lot in life.
- That young children practise GBV in early childhood and primary school settings where it is often interpreted as 'harmless childish play' or 'boys being boys'. However, if this behaviour is not appropriately dealt with and stopped, young children can become very skilled sexual harassers and sexual violators as they grow older.

TOPIC 6. PROCEDURES FOR DEALING WITH CASES OF **LEARNER SEXUAL ABUSE**

MATERIALS

- · Handout 5. Steps for reporting cases of learner sexual abuse
- Copies of the relevant pages in Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse: Speak Out! Extract 1 pages 18-19: Report abuse to the police Speak Out! Extract 2 page 20: Report abuse at school: If the abuser is an educator

Speak Out! Extract 3 page 21: Report abuse at school: If the abuser is a learner Speak Out! Extract 4 pages 22-23: Speak out! Against rape!

Task. What are the procedures for reporting learner sexual abuse?

Many educators feel uncertain about the appropriate procedures to follow when approached by a learner who has been sexually abused. This task will clarify some laid-down procedures and possibilities for support. It also gives participants the opportunity to highlight some of the issues around varied cases of abuse in their own school settings.

'Jigsaw' groups. Each small group must prepare and deliver a short reportback on one of the four Speak Out! extracts, so that by the end of the activity all participants have been exposed to each of the four extracts.

Group work. Distribute Handout 5 and copies of each of the Speak Out! sections to the groups. Read the instructions to the activity before giving groups time to discuss.

Report back. Get feedback on each set of guidelines and encourage the large group to ask questions about all the guidelines with their own school situation in mind. Note that issues of sensitivity about disclosure, stigma, children's family attachment to their abusers, confidentiality, etc. may come up in the discussion. Explain that these will be dealt with in more detail in Topic 7 and Workshop 6. Focus this activity on familiarising participants with the steps to follow when dealing with learner sexual abuse cases, and on how they can build school structures and links to the community for support.







Some possible responses to Handout 5

1.

Speak Out! Extract 1 pages 18–19: Report abuse to the police. This advice is especially useful for helping children who have been abused at home or in the community, including younger learners, although it applies to all cases of sexual violation or rape, i.e. cases where the abuse must be reported to the police.

Speak Out! Extract 2 page 20: Report abuse at school: If the abuser is an educator. This advice could apply to cases involving learners of both genders and all ages, but it applies to teenage girl learners and male teachers most frequently. Note that there needs to be a school (internal) process for possible discipline and/or dismissal of the educator, and an external criminal process, i.e. reporting to the police, possibly laying a charge, etc. Note that educators are legally required to report colleagues who abuse learners.

Speak Out! Extract 3 page 21: Report abuse at school: If the abuser is a learner. Again, this extract sets out both the internal school process and the requirement to go to the police for serious offences. The educator could help the learner write a letter, or an incident form (see samples from the National School Safety Framework on pages 73–74 of this manual) could be completed. This could apply to learners of all ages.

Speak Out! Extract 4 pages 22–23: Speak out! Against rape! This extract focuses mainly on reporting rape to the police, being prepared for the medical examination, getting medical treatment and tracking the case. It applies to all ages of abused learners.

2. & 3.

The support capacity at school and in the community may be discussed. Does the school have designated educators for dealing with abuse cases? Does the school have counselling capacity? Does the school have a school safety or support team? Does the local South African Police Service office deal effectively and sensitively with cases, or is there secondary abuse? Similarly, are local health workers and social worker(s) effective and sensitive in handling cases? Has the school established a support network and investigated further support capacity if needed (e.g. local non-governmental organisations and community-based organisations)?

4.

- You could refer participants to all Speak Out! extracts.
- If they think that a child has been raped, educators have to inform the police.
- Educators have a responsibility to investigate all learners' complaints of sexual abuse.
 Guidelines suggest that this be done by a team of designated educators at school.
- Parents of the abused learner and (if relevant) abusing learner must be informed.
- Educators must help learners to report sexual abuse.
- They must believe the learner, comfort them and organise counselling.

Note: Educators cannot conduct a criminal investigation or offer professional counselling but they can observe learners, help them report cases, help with internal investigations and help to build a caring and supportive school and classroom culture.

TOPIC 7. RESPONDING TO LEARNER SEXUAL ABUSE **SCENARIOS**

MATERIALS

- · Coloured markers
- · Large sheets of paper
- · Handout 6. Dealing with learner sexual abuse disclosure

Task. How do we deal with sexual abuse disclosures?

Small groups. Divide the large group into smaller groups of 2 or 3 and provide each group with several large sheets of paper and coloured marker pens. Distribute Handout 6 to all participants. Allocate one of the three scenarios to each group and ask participants to consider these questions in relation to the scenarios:

- 1. What are the relevant issues in their assigned scenario?
- 2. How should the educator handle the situation? In other words, how should they deal with the issues, support the learner and also use the steps explored in Topic 6?

Report back. Each group needs 20 minutes to work through their scenario, recording their ideas on the sheets of paper provided. A member of each group can report back on their suggestions to the whole group, allowing for some discussion and sharing of ideas. Ask participants whether they have encountered similar situations, how such situations play out in their own school settings and what is needed to improve the response at school.

Sensitive issues will arise: issues of fear of disclosure and confidentiality; the undeniable attachment children still feel for a family member who is an abuser and whom they may fear losing; the loss of income for families where the abuser is the breadwinner; stigma; and secondary abuse (e.g. Lettie's experience at the clinic).

CLOSING ACTIVITY

In the last 10 minutes of this session, ask the whole group to consider the following question: How can educators be advocates for children against child sexual abuse? Ask volunteers to share their thoughts with the group.





LENGTH:

SUGGESTED FOLLOW-UP ACTIVITIES

- 1. Compile your own help directory of services dealing with child sexual abuse or related issues (include, for example, Childline, the Child Protection Unit, the Stop Abuse Action Group and Rape Crisis). See the Workshop 6 activity on page 180 that focuses on building a support network in your own school community. You can decide when and if you want to use this activity in a workshop context. If you combine Workshop 4 with Workshop 6, this activity could provide a useful practical round-up for the composite workshop.
- 2. Personal 'helping hands' poster. Children devise a poster representing the people they would trust the most if they were in trouble. Children can trace around their hands on a sheet of paper and then write their own name on the top of the page. In each of the fingers and in the thumb, they write the names of the people they would trust to tell if something bad was happening to them. Point out that if one of their support people doesn't believe them or can't help them, then they can go to the next person on their 'hand'. They must keep going through the names until someone listens to them and agrees to try to help.
- 3. Activist group. Begin networking with other educators and parents in your area who are interested in organising a group that can meet on a regular basis to discuss ways of intervening actively in child sexual abuse in the community. At the end of Workshop 4, distribute a sign-up sheet for those wishing to keep in contact. Make photocopies and distribute to interested participants.
- 4. Distribute a sign-up sheet and conduct a follow-up workshop for those participants interested in sharing feedback on progress towards implementing ideas from this workshop in their communities.

USEFUL RESOURCES

Contact the Centre for the Study of Violence and Reconciliation (CSVR), Tel. 011 403 5650 (Johannesburg), 021 447 2470 (Cape Town); e-mail: info@csvr.org.za; website: www.csvr.org.za

Books and articles

Department of Basic Education. (2013). Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse. Pretoria

Department of Basic Education. (2011). Values in Action. Pretoria: DBE.

Department of Basic Education. (2014). National School Safety Framework. Pretoria.

MIET Africa and KwaZulu-Natal Department of Education. (2010). My Life! My Future! Staying Healthy. Durban: MIET Africa.

MIET Africa and KwaZulu-Natal Department of Education. (2011). Let's Talk: Breaking the Silence Around Sexual Abuse and Teenage Pregnancy. Durban: MIET Africa

Legislation

Children's Act 38 of 2005, amended 2007.

SACE Code of Professional Ethics

Sexual Offences Act, 2007

workShop 4 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 1. WHAT IS CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE?

Child sexual abuse takes place when an adult, adolescent or older child exploits a child for sexual purposes, with or without the child's consent. Chiefly, this behaviour abuses the power and authority that adults have over children. The perpetrator uses their advantages of size, age, sex and status to exploit the child. Child sexual abuse includes a range of behaviours such as the following: exposing one's genitals to a child; forcing or allowing a child to witness sexual acts; sexual touching; rape; oral, anal and vaginal penetration with an object, a penis or a finger; and involving children in prostitution, pornography and ritually abusive practices. (Also see the section below: *Understanding the law on child sexual abuse.*)

Adults are the most frequent perpetrators of child sexual abuse, but it is increasingly clear that many children and adolescents also abuse younger children sexually.

Intra-familial sexual abuse is the most common kind of child sexual abuse and can range from fondling to intercourse. In South Africa incest constitutes 80 per cent of all child sexual abuse cases and is most commonly perpetrated by fathers, stepfathers or another father figure. Mother—son, brother—sister and father—son incest also occurs.

Extra-familial sexual abuse is abusive behaviour where non-family members are the perpetrators; it is also common. Perpetrators might be family friends, school peers, teachers, members of the clergy and (less commonly) strangers. Quite often, they are also well-known and respected members of a community, which makes it difficult for some parents and other adults to believe that the abused child who discloses is telling the truth. Child sexual abuse is most frequently perpetrated by someone who is known to the child, and this seriously violates that child's trust.

Child sexual abuse occurs in all social, economic and cultural groups. Both girls and boys can experience it; however, girls are most frequently the victims. Males are predominantly the perpetrators of child sexual abuse against both girls and boys. Victims have been known to range from 3 months to 18 years of age: the average age of reported cases is approximately 5–7 years.

Understanding the law on child sexual abuse

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment of 2007 (also called the Sexual Offences Act) reflects a clear intention to protect children from sexual predators. Key provisions are as follows:

- A child of 12 years or under is considered not capable of consenting to sexual acts. Any sexual contact with a child under 12 years is called 'statutory rape' and is illegal.
- Rape is any form of sexual penetration (of genital organs, mouth or anus) without consent, irrespective of the gender of perpetrator and victim.
- Sexual violation is sexual contact (sexualised touching or forcing someone to touch – intimate parts), exposing children to pornography or using them for pornography, or making them watch sex acts.
- An adult who engages in sexual penetration or sexual contact/stimulation with a child of between 12 and 16 years, even with their consent, commits rape or sexual violation respectively.

These provisions mean that a wider range of sexual acts now fall within the same category as rape or sexual violation, so that abuse cannot be dismissed on technical distinctions.

The Act deals with the problem that children and teenagers may often appear to consent to abusive sexual acts because of the power gap between child and adult or child and older child. Children tend to believe adults, do what they ask, and seek to please them. They are not yet in a position to give clear and independent consent. Many sexual predators exploit children's need for attention and affection to gain their trust and compliance. They then begin to abuse them. The law therefore recognises how abusers exploit children's vulnerability, and regards children under 12 years as unable to consent under any circumstances and children/teenagers of 12–16 years as unable to consent to sexual acts with an older person.

The National Child Protection Register

In terms of section 111 of the Children's Act, the Director General must keep and maintain a National Child Protection Register. The Register consists of Part A and Part B.

Part A has a record of all reports of abuse or deliberate neglect of a child, convictions of all persons on charges involving the abuse or deliberate neglect of a child and all findings by a children's court that a child is in need of care and protection because of the abuse and deliberate neglect of the child (Western Cape Government website, accessed 23 April 2015).

Part B of the Register is a record of persons found to be unsuitable to work with children. This record includes the name, address, fingerprints and photograph of the person, together with a summary of the reasons why the person was found to be unsuitable to work with children and information of conviction, if relevant.

A finding that a person is unsuitable to work with children may be made by a children's court, other courts or an established or legally recognised forum which deals with disciplinary proceedings.

If a person is found to be unsuitable to work with children, and if he/she is employed in terms of the Public Service Act in a position where he/she works with or has access to children, that person must disclose the finding to the head of the state department in which he/she is employed. Failure to disclose the fact that his/her name is entered in the Register is misconduct, and may result in dismissal.

It is the responsibility of heads and managers of schools (and other bodies that deal with children, as well as all state departments) to establish whether the name of anyone connected with the school appears in Part B of the Register.





HANDOUT 2A. WHAT FACTORS CONTRIBUTE TO CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE?

Suggest factors contributing to child sexual abuse. Write suggestions under each of these five categories.

1.	Individual factors contributing to child sexual abuse:
_	
_	
2.	Family factors contributing to child sexual abuse:
_	
3.	Community factors contributing to child sexual abuse:
4.	Institutional factors contributing to child sexual abuse:
5.	Cultural factors contributing to child sexual abuse:

HANDOUT 2B. SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 2A

1. Individual

- Power over children (e.g. of adults, educators, parents).
- · Parents think that they 'own' children.
- Children, girls and women are vulnerable to dominant, aggressive men.
- Poverty makes children more vulnerable to being sexually exploited (with parents managing or condoning) through prostitution, 'survival sex' and transactional and transgenerational sex.

2. Family

- Economic disadvantage (poverty) which makes children more vulnerable to exploitation (e.g. prostitution, 'survival sex' and transactional sex).
- Parental power over children.
- · Male dominance in families.
- · Constructions of gender along traditional cultural values, reinforcing the power of men over women and children.

3. Community

- The condoning of child sexual abuse through limited intervention and enforced silencing of abused children and their families so as to 'avoid trouble'.
- The upholding of traditional gender-power relations in the community which leads to the entrenchment of the low status of women and children.
- The limited intervention into reported incidents of abuse and rape by community tribal courts in rural regions.

4. Institutional

- · Various institutions such as the police force, schools and children's homes fail to address child sexual abuse in the institution (e.g. poor disciplinary and support structures and procedures, unsafe buildings and grounds, lack of policy).
- Schools fail to address cases of reported rape by peers and educators.
- The refusal to recognise that child sexual abuse can and does occur in various institutions (e.g. schools).
- · Limited government financial and political support for dealing with child sexual abuse, including rape of girls and women (e.g. not all one-stop rape centres functioning; low information and no-counselling/no-medical/legal support in rural areas).
- The inadequacy of legal and medical interventions into child sexual abuse (e.g. secondary abuse and/or neglect occurring in police stations, clinics and courts).

5. Socio-cultural

- · The low status of women and children in society.
- The belief in the male 'ownership' of women and children.
- The condoning of rape and abuse of women and girls as culturally justified.
- The condoning of GBV as something that is normal.
- The high incidence of violent crimes in South African society today.
- · Misinformation: for example, the idea that not having sex is bad for a man's mental health and that he will go crazy if he doesn't have sex.
- The condoning of practices such as ukuthwala because it has a cultural origin, 'survival sex', 'sexploitation' of children, transactional sex, etc.
- The perpetuation of unequal power relations based on gender, race, class, etc.









HANDOUT 3A. MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

Read these statements and decide if they are *True* or *False*.

STATEMENTS	TRUE	FALSE
It is a father's right to have sex with his daughters – he is preparing them for marriage.		
2. 'Sexy' behaviour in children is one of the causes of them being sexually abused.		
3. It doesn't really hurt children to have sex with adults since they forget about it when they get older.		
4. A man who sexually abuses a child is possessed by the devil or is mentally ill.		
5. Most child sexual abuse is committed by men against girls.		
6. Parents who put their daughters into prostitution are not abusing them if they are doing it for the survival of the family.		
7. Some boys are sexually abused by other males, including fathers and uncles.		
8. Some educators sexually abuse the children in their care.		
9. If boys and men don't have sex they will go totally crazy.		
10. HIV and AIDS can be cured by having sex with a virgin.		
11. Child sexual abuse has nothing to do with other forms of violence.		
12. A 10-year-old boy is capable of sexually abusing a younger child.		
13. Most sexual abusers of children are family members.		
14. It is more harmful to sexually abuse a male child than a female child.		

HANDOUT 3B. SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 3A

1. False

A father doesn't have the right to have sex with his daughter. Legally it is against the law to have sex with one's children. Parents are in a position of trust to protect their children from harm and to provide a safe and secure environment in which to live, free from abuse. Children are not the property of parents; they have their own rights. Child abuse committed by someone the child knows, particularly a parent figure, is a violation of trust.

2. False

No child asks to be sexually abused. Sexual abuse is a breach of trust on the part of the adult or the older child, and is not caused by the abused child in any way. Abusers must take the responsibility for their behaviour.

3. False

Much evidence shows that child sexual abuse can have long-term effects on the adult survivor. The extent of the effects may vary between individuals. Adults can experience depression, difficulties relating sexually to partners, and addiction to drugs and alcohol as a result of sexual abuse in childhood.

4. False

Research indicates that men who sexually abuse are not usually mentally ill or psychologically disturbed. Child sexual abuse is committed most frequently by ordinary men who abuse their power and authority for their own gains. Child sexual abuse is more about power relations between adults and children and between males and females, than it is about sex itself.

5. True

Most child sexual abuse is committed by men against girls, and this is the case worldwide. However, research does seem to show that abuse of boys by men and also by women may be more prevalent than previously understood. Male abuse of schoolboys is more common in rural areas while abuse by female perpetrators occurs more frequently in urban settings.

6. False

Poverty contributes greatly to 'survival sex' where parents sexually exploit their daughters for the survival of their family. Intervention against poverty can help to prevent this practice. However, poverty does not excuse child sexual abuse which is a violation of children's rights and an abuse of child-adult power relations. Not all poor families resort to sexually exploiting their daughters.

7. True

Boys do experience sexual abuse from male family members and non-family members, though at a lesser rate than do girls. Boys find it difficult to discuss being abused by males since such abuse is perceived to carry homosexual overtones which results in further stigma in many societies.

8. True

Some educators engage in the sexual abuse of children in their care. This is a violation of the children's trust and a transgression of the duty of care that states





4 HANDOUTS

that schools and educators have to protect children in their care from abuse. Male educators are known to have sexual relationships with older children or adolescent girls, and this often results in pregnancy. The sexual abuse of very young children in day care or playschool also occurs.

9. False

This excuses boys' use of sexual violence against women and is similar to the equally false idea that men have such a strong sex drive that they can't be expected to control this urge and abstain when a woman says 'No'.

10. False

This is another misconception in South Africa, as well as elsewhere in the world. It may have impacted on the incidence of child rape because of the HIV and AIDS epidemic, but this is not certain.

11. False

Child sexual abuse is part of a continuum of violence perpetrated against women and children. Just because this violence happens to children, often at the hands of their parents, does not mean that it is excusable or that it is different from other forms of violence experienced by children.

12. True

Young boys do engage in the sexual abuse of younger children, particularly girls. Once again, this involves the abuse of power, size and age for personal gratification, over those less powerful, younger and smaller. Young children are most vulnerable to abuse from older children on the way to or home from school, when older children babysit younger children, or during play. Children are aware of power and how to use and abuse it.

13. True

The most common form of child sexual abuse is probably incest, i.e. sexual abuse that is perpetrated by a family member. Incest is a very common form of sexual abuse in South Africa and may account for about 80 per cent of cases, although it is difficult to get accurate statistics.

14. False

The sexual abuse of boys may be less common than the abuse of girls, but not more harmful. Some people may perceive it as being more harmful because of their cultural values which give women lower status. But sexual abuse is harmful to both boys and girls.

HANDOUT 4. INDICATORS OF CHILD SEXUAL ABUSE

For various reasons many children do not readily report being sexually abused. If they do not report, how will we know what has happened? Marked changes in behaviour are a common sign of traumatic experience: for example, from outgoing to withdrawn, from fun-loving to fearful and sad. Specific signs could be:

- Fear of particular people, places, times, going to bed, the toilet, being alone, being touched
- · Overly compliant behaviour, too yielding/wanting to please
- · Attention-seeking behaviour
- · Lack of trust; disbelief
- · Struggling to make simple decisions
- Unhappiness, anxiety, crying, sleeplessness, nightmares, bed-wetting, soiling the bed or pants, needing too much sleep (which may indicate depression)
- Negative self-image, blaming self for things that happen
- · Withdrawal, not wanting to talk, make friends, be in crowds, socialise
- · Not seeing, not hearing, not feeling, not thinking
- Confusion
- · Pseudo-mature behaviour, taking on inappropriate adult roles
- · Persistent regression (e.g. behaving as a younger child would)
- Rejection of an adult (usually the abuser, but may also be of a caregiver)
- Clinging, fear of separation
- Indirect messages, such as "I don't like ..." and "I don't like going to..."
- · Has secrets he/she doesn't want to tell
- · Hints about sexual activity, adults doing 'naughty things'
- · Inappropriate sexual knowledge
- · Physically or sexually aggressive behaviour (e.g. damaging things)
- · Persistent and inappropriate sexual play with peers, toys or themselves
- Engaging in excessively frequent bouts of masturbation
- · Playing games with threats
- · Inability to concentrate, difficulty at school, absenteeism
- Obsessions (e.g. with school activities, housework, washing)
- Drawing with unusual symbolism
- · Self-punishment or self-destructive behaviour (e.g. drug or alcohol abuse, suicide attempts, self-mutilation, theft, running away, prostitution, promiscuity)
- Changes in eating habits (e.g. obesity, anorexia)
- Pain, itchiness, discomfort, irritation of mouth, genitals, anus, difficulty swallowing
- · Bleeding from the vagina of prepubescent girls, or bleeding from the anus
- · Physical illness, fatigue, headaches, asthma, arthritis
- · Changes in body smell
- · Irregularities or difficulties in menstrual cycle
- · Pregnancy, venereal disease







This is a very extensive list which provides a guide only to possible sexual abuse in children. In child sexual abuse. usually more than one indicator will be there at the same time.





HANDOUT 5. STEPS FOR REPORTING CASES OF LEARNER SEXUAL ABUSE

The *Speak Out!* pages the facilitator gave your group outline the steps learners and educators should follow when a learner has been sexually abused. Imagine you are an educator who must help learners go through these necessary steps.

Read the *Speak Out!* pages carefully so that when you report back to the larger group you can explain the process they describe and add your own ideas and questions. Use the following questions to guide your report-back:

- 1. Which kind(s) of child sexual abuse case(s) and what age(s) of learner does the information respond to?
- 2. Looking at your own school and community, what issues might arise when following the process? For example, what support structures are in place at your school and district that could help? What other relevant services are available, and how well do they function? (e.g. the South African Police Service, health services, social workers, etc.). Does your school have links with any of these services?
- 3. Given the capacity in your school and community, what can you do to give an abused learner the best support possible at present? What might need to be put in place to improve the process in future cases of abuse?
- 4. A general question: What are the limits in helping learners who disclose abuse to you? What advice would you give another educator about this?

HANDOUT 6. DEALING WITH LEARNER SEXUAL ABUSE **DISCLOSURE**

Scenario 1. Thembi's story

Lizeka arrives early for school and is preparing her classroom for the day's activities. Ten minutes before class she notices Thembi, a six-year-old girl in her class, having difficulty walking up the corridor towards the classroom. Lizeka says, "Good morning," but Thembi doesn't reply which is unusual because she is usually a bubbly, friendly and lively child who enjoys talking to her teachers before class. But today she chooses to sit outside the classroom until the start of the class. Lizeka notices Thembi has difficulty sitting during lessons and she asks her what is wrong: Thembi says she has hurt her leg. Lizeka is busy with other children and leaves her to settle down. During the afternoon Lizeka again notices that Thembi seems to be in pain and is struggling to walk. Lizeka senses that there is something seriously wrong so she approaches Thembi and sits down beside her. She notices the back of Thembi's dress is torn and there is some blood on it. Concerned, Lizeka asks Thembi to her see her sore leg, but Thembi refuses, saying that she's all right. Then Thembi bursts into tears. Lizeka puts her arm around her but Thembi continues to sob. Eventually, Thembi tells Lizeka that her Uncle Joseph did something terrible to her on the way to school: he held her down and lay on top of her, putting his penis into her bottom area. Thembi sobs as she tells Lizeka how much it hurts and that she is going to die when her Uncle Joseph finds out that she has told her teacher. Lizeka quickly thinks about what she should do next. She is very shocked: Thembi's Uncle Joseph is a prominent businessman in the community who does a lot of charity work for the school. Lizeka likes Joseph and they have dated several times in recent years. He seems like a kind and gentle man.

- a. What might be some of the concerns that Lizeka has about this situation?
- b. What should Lizeka do in this situation?

Scenario 2. Ngconde's story

One afternoon a Grade 4 teacher, Synta, was waiting with other children for their bus to take them home. Synta noticed that Ngconde from her Grade 4 class was standing talking with his Uncle Kgagudi. Synta walked over to Ngconde and Kgagudi to say hello since she had met Kgagudi on several occasions when he came to pick Ngconde up from school. (Kgagudi wasn't Ngconde's real uncle, though; he just called him that.)

Kgagudi was a close friend of Ngconde's family and often volunteered to walk him home from school, or look after him when his mother and father were away at work. Ngconde really liked Kgagudi when they had first met because he often took him to the local soccer games and even introduced Ngconde to the captain of the team who sometimes played in national competitions.

As Synta got walked closer, she could hear Ngconde refusing to go with Kgagudi who was now crouching down and talking to him.

She caught Kgagudi saying to Ngconde, "But you enjoy going to the soccer games and meeting the star players, don't you?"

"Yes," Ngconde reluctantly replied, and Synta noticed that Ngconde was starting to cry.





4 HANDOUTS

"If you don't come with me now, we won't go to any more games," said Kgagudi.

Kgagudi stood up as Synta reached them. "Is anything wrong, Ngconde?" asked Synta.

Synta could see the fear in Ngconde's eyes as he quietly replied, "No, Miss."

Kgagudi quickly grabbed Ngconde's hand to lead him away, saying that Ngconde wasn't feeling well. Synta was puzzled by their behaviour, but recalled that this was not the only time she had seen Ngconde reluctant to go with Kgagudi. As she turned to go back to the group of children, Synta saw Ngconde climbing into Kgagudi's car and looking back at her, almost as if he was calling out to her. Synta was disturbed by what she saw and heard – and it wasn't the first time this had happened.

- a. Should Synta continue to investigate Ngconde's situation?
- b. What indicators are present that might indicate some form of abuse?
- c. How should Synta proceed in this situation?

Scenario 3. Lettie's story

Mrs K. is packing up at the end of her final class for the day when she notices Lettie (14), a rather quiet learner, is still there. Recently, Lettie has put on a lot of weight and missed several days of school. For a while, Mrs K. has also noticed Lettie's sad and anxious expression. She has heard that Lettie's family is struggling since her father passed away a year ago and she wonders if that is the problem. But when she calls Lettie up to her desk to talk to her, Lettie's tears flow freely and she tells a sad but different story.

A few months ago, Lettie's Geography teacher, Mr Zondo, asked her to come down to the teachers' cottages after school and help him clean his place. She agreed because she had a crush on him – all the girls thought he was very handsome and loved his intimate, jokey style in class. Lettie was happy that Mr Zondo had noticed her and she told her younger sister to tell their mother that she had extra schoolwork to finish. She wasn't sure what would happen but when she arrived at the cottage he was very warm to her. He suddenly took her in his arms, and soon they were having sex.

She thought that it was a real love affair because he invited her there most days after school and even gave her a cellphone so they could make arrangements. But now everything has changed – he has another girl friend. Not only this, but Lettie is pregnant. Mr Zondo says he is already married with children and he will pay her mother some money for the pregnancy. But Lettie is scared to tell her mother and she is also worried about school.

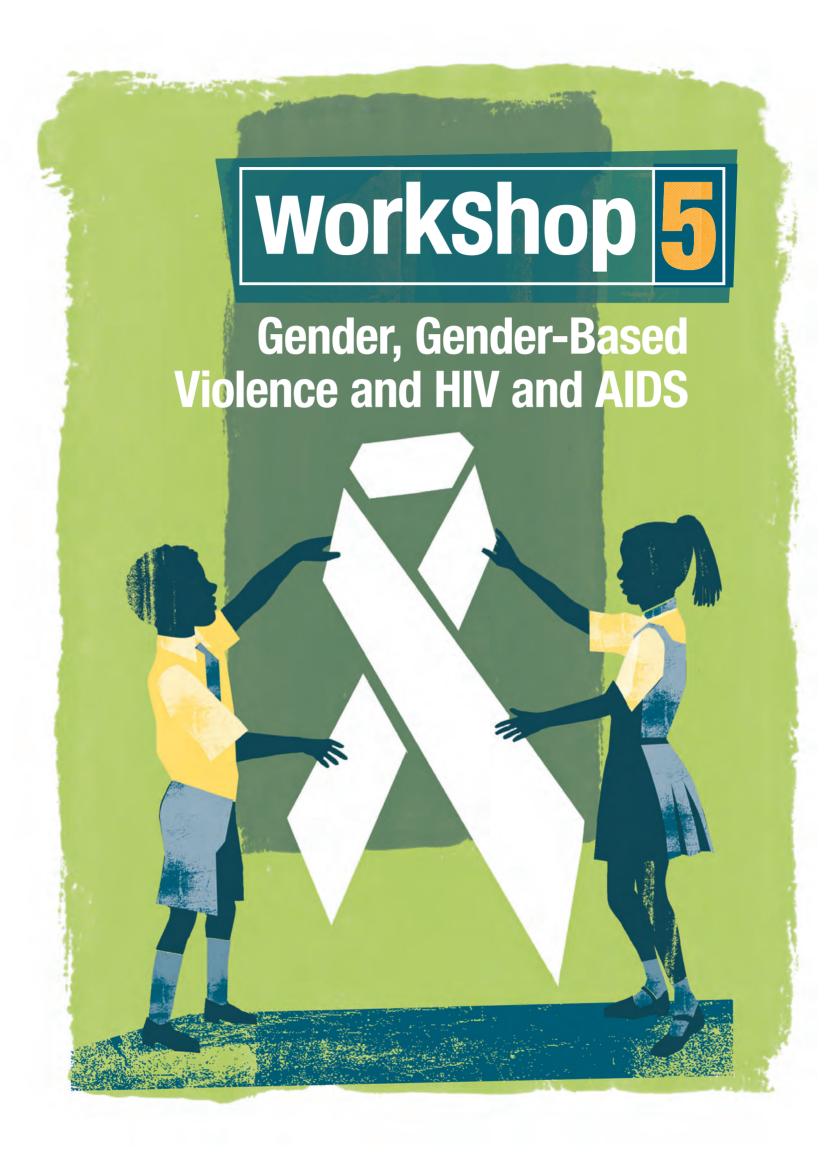
"Some learners have noticed – there are some boys and girls teasing me. Today in break a boy poked my stomach and said, 'Is that from Mr Z?' Everyone standing nearby was laughing and whispering. And when I did the pregnancy test at the clinic, the sister called me 'ubu-slut'. I'm afraid to go there now."

Nearly everyone on the staff knows that Mr Zondo has affairs with learners, but although Mrs K and several other educators are feeling bad about it, no one has done anything, including the principal, who is very friendly with him.

- a. What issues does this scenario raise?
- b. What can Mrs K. do?

NOTES	





5 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Introduction: The link between gender-based violence and HIV

Violence or the fear of violence can obstruct HIV prevention, care and treatment, because it can limit a person's ability to learn their status and take and maintain protective measures, which can range from negotiating safer sex to getting and staying on treatment to staying in school (Gardsbane, the World Health Organization and the Joint UN Programme on HIV/AIDS in Amuyunzu-Nyamongo 2013). Violence can also hinder access to basic health information and services, including HIV treatment, care and support. On the other hand, someone who has tested positive for HIV can experience stigma, discrimination, isolation and violence in the home and community. This makes it all the more difficult for women, girls and other at-risk populations to pursue healthy, satisfying, and productive lives (Hale and Vazquez in Amuyunzu-Nyamongo 2013).

Women, girls and other at-risk populations' vulnerability to HIV and gender-based violence (GBV) are a result of unequal power relationships based on biological sex, gender identity and sexual orientation. These power relationships can be entrenched in cultural beliefs and societal norms, and can be reinforced in political and economic systems.

Linking GBV and HIV efforts is both necessary and potentially powerful in eliminating the structural causes of each, and achieving lasting results in the fight against HIV. Both GBV and HIV require a comprehensive response that addresses biomedical, behavioural and social risk factors, and their implications for affected populations. Both require well-coordinated, multi-sectoral efforts that address the multiple ways in which violence and HIV infection can affect peoples' lives, including their health, education, social interactions, economic opportunities, safety, legal protections and human rights. And both must be addressed on an ongoing basis, throughout the life cycle, to ensure lasting results.

Facts about HIV and AIDS

The results of the Human Sciences Research Council's (HSRC's) South African National HIV Prevalence, Incidence and Behaviour Survey, 2012 (Shisana et al. 2014) strongly reflect the link between HIV and AIDS and gender, particularly among the youth.

Prevalence (the number of people infected with HIV) increased from 10.6 per cent of the total population in 2008 to 12.2 per cent in 2012, i.e. 6.4 million people living with HIV and AIDS. However, in the 15–49 year age group, the prevalence was higher: 18.8 per cent. Of this, females accounted for 23.4 per cent and males 14.5 per cent. Amongst the youth there were more significant differences between males and females:

- Ages 15–19 years: 0.7 per cent of males and 5.6 per cent of females.
- Ages 20-24 years: 5.1 per cent of males and 17.4 per cent of females.

Incidence (the number of new cases in a year) is also very significant. In this group, the 2012 incidence for young females is more than four times higher than for young males:

• Ages 15-24 years: 0.55 per cent for males and 2.54 per cent for females.

Other alarming trends are:

- · A decline in condom use in all age groups.
- A steady increase in multiple sexual partners amongst people of 15-49 years: now 23.1 per cent of males and 5.1 per cent of females.
- 76.5 per cent of respondents aged 15 years and older believed that they were at no or low risk of getting infected with HIV (yet 1 in 10 of these very same people were already infected but did not know it - anonymous testing of the respondents was part of the research method).
- · A decline in overall knowledge about how HIV is transmitted and prevented: from 30.3 per cent in 2008 to 26.8 per cent in 2012.
- · An increase in age-disparate (intergenerational) sex: 33.6 per cent of females in the 15-20 year age group now have sexual partners who are five years older, compared with 4.5 per cent of males in this age group.
- · An increase in boys who start having sex (sexual debut) before the age of 15 years from 11.3 per cent in 2008 to 16.7 per cent in 2012.
- A high HIV prevalence rate among couples living together but not married.

Risky behaviours

The results of the HSRC survey show that HIV is still very much more prevalent amongst girls and women than boys and men, and that there has been an increase in the following risky sexual behaviours:

- Having sex without a condom
- · Having multiple concurrent (during the same time period) sexual partners
- · Age-disparate/intergenerational sex
- · Early sexual debut.

Factors that predispose women to HIV infection

To understand how risky behaviour patterns link with GBV and make women especially vulnerable to risk, we need to look at the issues underlying the statistics. In particular, who is taking the risks and who is affected by the risky behaviour of others? How might a person weigh up one kind of risk against another? Who is most at risk, and who is least (or not) at risk? What factors other than behaviour put people at higher risk?

While the trends indicate to schools and educators the targets they can set for HIV and AIDS education, it is the factors that predispose women to HIV infection that should guide us in deciding how best to tackle preventing infection.

Definitions:



HIV prevalence: Usually given as a percentage, HIV prevalence quantifies the proportion of individuals in a population who have HIV at a specific point in time.

HIV incidence: The number of new HIV infections in a population during a certain time period.

Biological factors

It is easier to transmit HIV from males to females, than from females to male. The reasons are:

- The lining of the vagina is a large surface area that can be exposed to HIV-infected semen during sexual intercourse. The penis has a much smaller surface area.
- The lining of the vagina is thinner than the skin of the penis and is more vulnerable to cuts and tears, which enable easier transmission of HIV or sexually transmitted infections (STIs).
- Semen remains in the vagina long after sex, increasing the chance of contracting HIV
- There is more virus in sperm than in vaginal fluid.
- The vagina is more likely to get small lacerations (tears) than the penis during sex.
- Adolescent girls are particularly susceptible.
- Pre-pubescent girls are even more vulnerable, as the wall of the vagina is only one cell thick until puberty.

Uninfected women are about twice as likely to contract HIV from infected men as vice versa (Global Coalition on Women and AIDS 2004). Even a single episode of unprotected sex is therefore risky for women who may be receiving infected semen from a male partner.

NOTE:



The risk is significantly increased if the sex is violent. According to UNAIDS (2010), women who have experienced violence are up to three times more likely to be infected with HIV than those who have not.

Factors related to gender inequality

As mentioned in the introduction to this workshop, gender inequity is globally recognised as one of the fundamental drivers of HIV and AIDS. Unequal power relationships between men and women result in men generally deciding the conditions under which sex occurs. In such situations, women's ability to negotiate safer sex practices is constrained and can often lead to coerced or forced sexual intercourse. Both GBV and gender inequality are pertinent social problems that negatively impact on the sexual experiences of the youth in South Africa, especially young females, and increase their risk of HIV infection. Many female youths report a lack of social power in their sexual relationships and this increases their risk of being infected with HIV. In a national sample of youths (15-24 years), 27 per cent of female youths felt that a lack of social power within their sexual relationships stopped them from using condoms on a regular basis (Pettifor et al. 2004b). Females are more likely than males to experience forced sexual intercourse. Forced sexual intercourse was reported amongst 7.6 per cent of learners in 2011 in the National Youth Risk Behaviour Survey (Reddy et al. 2013) with 4.8 per cent of females and 10.5 per cent of males between 15 and 19 years of age reporting that they had perpetrated forced sexual intercourse.

Norms of violent and aggressively sexual masculinity. In some settings, physical force and intimidation is seen as masculine behaviour. Masculinity is often linked to having an active sex life, and many men see sex and asserting authority over women as ways to prove their masculinity. Young men who are facing a future of economic

insecurity may use sex to gain a sense of control in their lives (Barker and Ricardo 2005).

Multiple concurrent sexual partners. Having a higher overall number of sexual partners, a high turnover of sexual partners and concurrent sexual partners (or partners who have concurrent sexual partnerships) are all risk factors for HIV infection. Having multiple sexual partners increases the likelihood of exposure to HIV through expanding sexual networks. During the acute phases of HIV infection the viral load is high, increasing the risk of transmission (Parker et al. 2007).

Alcohol and drug abuse in men often goes together with risky sexual behaviour such as multiple sexual partners and inconsistent use of condoms, and can also fuel coercive, violent sex (Sonke Gender Justice and MenEngage n.d.).

Condom use. The HSRC survey reported that over a third (36.2 per cent) of all respondents aged 15 years and older who were sexually active during the previous 12 months indicated that they had used a condom at their last sex act with their most recent sexual partner. Significant sex differences were found, with a higher percentage of males (38.6 per cent) reporting that they had used a condom than females (33.6 per cent). An alarming finding was that just over two-thirds (67.5 per cent) of young men aged between 15 and 24 reported using condoms at their last sexual encounter in 2012, down from 85.2 per cent in 2008 (Shisana et al. 2014).

Women are vulnerable when it comes to negotiating sex/safe sex. A 2005 study (Langen 2007) showed that women with partners 10 or more years older than them, abused women and those who were economically dependent on their partners were less likely to suggest condom use to their partners. Women who had only up to primary school level schooling, were married and did not have open communication with their partners on matters related to sex and HIV were also less likely to suggest condom use to their partners. The study also showed that men were more likely to refuse to use a condom when the age difference was 10 years or more, if they were married and where there was no communication about HIV and AIDS between them and their partners. A disturbing finding was that men who had multiple partners were significantly more likely to refuse to use a condom.

Difficulties and fears related to testing and disclosure. In the UNAIDS *Gap Report* (2014) it is stated that the number of AIDS-related deaths in sub-Saharan Africa fell by 39 per cent between 2005 and 2013, with a significant decline of 48 per cent in South Africa, and that this success is linked directly to the increase in the number of people on antiretroviral therapy. Voluntary counselling and testing (VCT) services provide an entry point to HIV prevention programmes and antiretroviral therapy, as well as an opportunity to access prevention of mother-to-child transmission programmes. Although many more women than men access HIV counselling and testing, many women do not get tested for HIV, and do not get treated once they are infected. Women fear (Medley et al. 2004):

- abandonment
- · loss of economic support from partners
- rejection and discrimination
- · upsetting family members
- accusations of infidelity.

Intergenerational sex appears to be an enduring problem among young girls. For young people, and particularly girls under the age of 20, having older partners is a significant risk factor for HIV infection as older sexual partners have a higher likelihood of being HIV positive. In 2012 about a fifth of all respondents aged 15–19 years (19.9 per cent) were involved in age-disparate relationships involving a sexual

5 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Definitions:



Transactional sex: The term used to describe sexual interactions that involve the exchange of sex for gifts, money, services or other forms of material or nonmaterial gain.

Intergenerational sex: Refers to sex between adolescent girls or boys and older partners. partner who was more than five years older than they were. More interestingly, there was a significant sex difference: a third (33.7 per cent) of all female adolescents aged 15–19 years reported having had a partner more than five years their senior, compared with only 4.1 per cent of their male counterparts (Shisana et al. 2014).

Transactional sex. Transactional sex often takes place in circumstances of wealth inequality where peoples' need for economic security supersedes their health and safety concerns. Transactional sex serves to disempower women through reducing their ability to negotiate safer sex practices, particularly condom use (Pettifor et al. 2004a). Indeed, studies have shown that the greater the value of the gift, service or money exchanged for sex, the less likely it is that the couple will engage in safe sexual practices. Amongst female youth, reciprocity of sex in exchange for material goods leads to young women remaining in dysfunctional relationships, engaging in multiple sexual partnerships and involvement with older men.

Educators who have sexual relationships with their learners. Human Rights Watch (2001) found evidence of widespread sexual abuse and harassment of girls by both teachers and learners in South Africa. Furthermore, it was found that such abuse had a 'profoundly destabilising' effect on the education of girls. In addition to the risks involved in the sexual activities, discussions about safe sex and 'owning' one's body become meaningless when learners are being exploited by a person who is in charge of their education.

HIV and AIDS education: using a gender-sensitive approach

HIV and AIDS are complex and sensitive issues. To be effective, school-based programmes on HIV and AIDS need to deal with the many risk factors affecting the youth, and highlight the part that gender plays in HIV transmission. This means dealing in turn with the tough issue of GBV and all the factors (such as poverty, child sexual exploitation and multiple partnerships) that support it.

- 1. Capacity building for both girls and boys. Deep-seated norms around male sexual behaviour must be addressed in order to achieve the widespread behaviour change necessary to curb the HIV epidemic. Practices such as multiple and concurrent sexual partners, cross-generational sex and transactional sex increase vulnerability to HIV infection, particularly among women and girls. These risky practices are often perpetuated by norms that reinforce such behaviours among men and boys. In a context of power inequalities, it is important for both boys and girls to be encouraged to take ownership and care of their own bodies and place their sexuality in the context of their lives as a whole: their identity, values, relationships and their dreams for the future. In this context, messages about using condoms and taking the test/knowing your HIV status have more meaning.
- 2. Building a positive, sexually responsible masculine identity. Programmes need to challenge aggressive ways of expressing masculinity which increase the risk of HIV transmission for both male and female youths. Educating young men about sexual responsibility and the threat of HIV infection is fundamental to reducing the spread of AIDS. Positive male role models are important. Programmes should also challenge notions of women's inferiority and subservience.
- 3. Sexuality education as the framework. Sex education focuses mainly on biological information about how our bodies function, whereas sexuality education deals not only with biological information but also with forming attitudes, beliefs and values related to our sexuality. It encompasses sexual

development, sexual and reproductive health (including contraception), sexual needs, interpersonal relationships, affection, intimacy, body image and gender roles.

- 4. Healthy and unhealthy relationships. Exploring the dynamics of different kinds of relationships helps to expose unequal male-female interactions and provide alternative ways of interacting, e.g. over using a condom or waiting until one is ready for sex.
- 5. Life skills education. Teaching learners (especially girl learners) skills in assertiveness, decision-making and negotiation is of paramount importance. These skills are useful as long as the overall programme also deals fully with the way gender violence and inequality constrains women/girls in sexual situations.
- 6. Peer education is used as a strategy to role-model health-promoting behaviour and to shift peer norms on various health and social issues as a support to curriculum implementation. It is believed that when young people are involved in designing and delivering them, such programmes are often sustainable and effective because they have immediate buy-in of the recipients. The participation of learners through student representative councils and other school-based clubs, including peer education structures, will further ensure successful implementation of HIV and GBV prevention programmes.
- 7. Healthy lifestyle. Having a positive approach about life in general should be instilled in young people's minds from a very early age. An approach which promotes safe sexual practices in the context of positive life goals, plans for the future, dreams and hopes, and which commends young people for responsible behaviour is more effective than a message that seeks to instil fear. While youths need to be well-informed about risks, it can be unhelpful to over-emphasise negative consequences that may already be obvious in their communities. Feelings of fatalism can get in the way of positive behavioural change.
- 8. A multi-sectoral and whole-school approach is important. Given the complexity and sensitivity of factors related to AIDS, it is understandable that many teachers feel unprepared to tackle HIV and AIDS education. They may also feel discouraged by disagreement amongst educators - and between parents and educators - about the approach to educating learners about sexuality and HIV and AIDS. School management and school governing bodies should take the lead in promoting a whole-school approach to school programming on HIV and AIDS by involving teachers, parents and learners in the process. In this way, teachers will feel more supported as they take on this important work in their classrooms. Refer to Workshop 8, pages 234-246, for more information about the whole-school approach.
- 9. Referral and follow-up. Where learners are identified as requiring other services that cannot be provided in schools (e.g. social, medical or legal services), mechanisms must be put in place for ensuring that learners can access such services.

FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR

WorkShop 5

WORKSHOP LENGTH: 2 HOURS 30 MINUTES

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- Provide accurate information on HIV prevalence in South Africa and also place HIV infection in context.
- · Highlight that females are more vulnerable to HIV and AIDS.
- Explore the connection between GBV and HIV and AIDS.
- Identify some of the risk behaviours/factors for HIV infection.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- Understand the complexities of HIV infection in South Africa.
- Have a greater understanding of how gender can impact on the vulnerability of women to HIV and other health risks.
- Link GBV to an increase in chances of HIV infection.
- Define the risky behaviours/factors that can cause the youth to be at risk of HIV infection.
- Create an environment that respects the rights of HIV-positive learners and educators through sharing of accurate and relevant information on HIV and AIDS.
- Identify and work with all relevant stakeholders (learners, educators, school governing bodies, communities) to support the wide-scale social mobilisation intended to expand HIV counselling and testing to all South Africans.

OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- Topic 1. The link between HIV and AIDS and gender (20 minutes)
- Topic 2. HIV prevalence and related sexual behaviour (20 minutes)
- Topic 3. Youth at risk in transgenerational relationships (30 minutes)
- Topic 4. Levels of HIV risk and factors that affect risk (50 minutes)
- Topic 5. Gender and HIV testing (20 minutes)

MATERIALS

- Copies of Background information, pages 140–145
- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- Prepared cards (see Topic 4)
- · PowerPoint presentation

WORKSHOP 5 HANDOUTS

HANDOUT 1A **TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE ABOUT HIV AND AIDS**

AND GENDER

HANDOUT 1B **SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 1A**

HANDOUT 2 **ZAMA'S STORY**

HANDOUT 3A **CARDS: SEXUAL BEHAVIOUR**

CARDS: FACTORS AFFECTING SEXUAL BEHAVIOUR HANDOUT 3B





GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 5

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



It is essential that you read the *Background Information* section because it contains information you may need in order to support and respond to participants and give input.

This workshop addresses very sensitive content. Therefore it is essential to read *Guidelines for facilitating activities focused on sensitive topics* (pages 6 and 7) which will help you support and respond to participants.

LENGTH:

MINUTES

INTRODUCTION

Give an overview of the workshop and its objectives and do an icebreaker activity.

TOPIC 1. THE LINK BETWEEN HIV AND AIDS AND GENDER

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Marker
- · Handout 1A Test your knowledge about HIV and AIDS and gender
- Handout 1B Suggested responses to Handout 1A

Task. What do we know about HIV and AIDS and gender?

Small group discussion Organise groups of four and distribute Handout 1A. Groups should decide if each statement is True or False and note down reasons for their answers in each case.

Report back in groups Distribute Handout 1B. Ask participants to compare their answers from Handout 1A with the suggested responses in Handout 1B and also with members of other groups. Allow comments, questions and answers. Summarise key issues, insights and 'rethinks' that have arisen in discussion on the flipchart. (There is more detail on these issues in Background information, pages 142–144, and opportunity for further discussion in Workshop 6.)



Participants' responses should be partly informed by their exploration of GBV issues in the previous workshops. Emphasise the key issues for this workshop.

It is becoming increasingly apparent that gender roles and unequal power relations are fundamental to the spread of HIV because they:

- give men power to initiate sex and dictate how it happens and
- make it very difficult for women to protect themselves from HIV or violence.

LENGTH:









TOPIC 2. HIV PREVALENCE AND RELATED SEXUAL BEHAVIOUR

MATERIALS

- · Flipchart paper
- Markers
- PowerPoint/flipchart presentation
- Background information pages 140–141

Task. Identifying current trends in HIV-related sexual behaviour

Group discussion. Explain to participants that they are going to look at some of the findings of the HSRC *Survey of South African National HIV Prevalence, Incidence and Behaviour, 2012* (Shisana 2014). It was the fourth national population-based survey (others were conducted in 2002, 2005 and 2008).

Ask participants what 'prevalence' and 'incidence' mean. Explain these terms and indicate that together with behaviour patterns, these trends help to show us how gender is a factor in risky sexual behaviour. If we understand something of *how* men and women, boys and girls behave in risky sexual situations, we can start to consider *why* they do so and what might be done about it.

PowerPoint/flipchart presentation. Use the *Background information* for this workshop as the basis of your presentation (pages 140–141). Make copies of the relevant pages if you prefer.

Invite responses and questions as you present and ask participants to offer possible reasons for behaviour trends that are being highlighted. At the end of the presentation, ask participants this important question: What issues do you need to target with youths in your own school community based on the trends you have heard about in Topic 2?

Write up responses on the flipchart.

In conclusion. Explain to participants that Topic 3 looks at a category of relationship that has risen very sharply and is highly relevant for schooling: transgenerational relationships/encounters. Who is at least risk in such relationships? Who is at most risk? What makes one of the partners particularly vulnerable?

TOPIC 3. YOUTH AT RISK IN TRANSGENERATIONAL RELATIONSHIPS

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Markers
- Paper
- Handout 2. Zama's story

Task. Looking at factors that predispose women to HIV infection and risk in Zama's story

In pairs and whole group. Give pairs a few minutes to discuss the meaning of the word 'vulnerable' and then let them share their ideas with the whole group. Write an agreed-upon definition on the flipchart, e.g. able to be easily hurt, influenced or attacked, either physically, emotionally or mentally.

Small group discussion. Organise same-sex groups and distribute Handout 2. Ask participants to read it and discuss the questions. They should draw on ideas from their discussion in Topic 1, as well as the trends and risky behaviours outlined in the HSRC findings.

Report back. Lead the report-back (see the suggested responses below). Emphasise that the story illustrates how cultural gender norms and roles and unequal power have a significant impact on the risks that women and girls face.

Suggested responses

See the Background information for this workshop (pages 141-144) for information on factors that predispose women to HIV

- 1. Note that Zama and her boyfriend practice nearly all the risky behaviours currently on the increase: sex without a condom, multiple partners (only him), intergenerational sex and early sexual debut.
- 2. Zama's body, as a female, is especially vulnerable and more so because she is still developing. Her boyfriend reflects most of the common male beliefs and practices about sex. She is therefore in a gender-unequal situation where he has the power to initiate sex and dictate how sex happens and she cannot negotiate her own preferences, including protection. Her youth makes her even more vulnerable to his abuse and the risks involved. Poverty and unemployment at home contribute to her sense of powerlessness and need, and her family situation lacks emotional support and an adequate caregiver. This affects her personal capacity: her self-esteem, values, aspirations and goals. All these factors increase her vulnerability to risk.
- 3. Zama's health and potentially her life is now at risk and so is her education and the chance of further education, employment, future well-being and economic security. In addition, her child's future is at risk: its health and survival and its chances of a secure life and opportunities.
- 4. Accept a range of views but emphasise Zama's vulnerability and ask why the boyfriend is apparently not mentioned or held responsible at all. Many people are quick to condemn teenage girls who get involved with older men, especially if the girls are sexually provocative, wear revealing clothes, etc., but the surface bravado does not mean that they are less vulnerable.
- 5. Yes, not only because of the forced sex but also because of the intention to use and abuse her; and her boyfriend is liable for criminal prosecution because Zama is under age and therefore not competent to engage in consensual sex.





5 GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

LENGTH:



TOPIC 4. LEVELS OF HIV RISK AND FACTORS THAT AFFECT RISK

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Markers
- Prestik®
- · Handout 3A. Cards: Sexual behaviour
- Handout 3B. Cards: Factors affecting sexual behaviour

NOTE



Before the workshop, cut up cards from Handouts 3A and 3B for use in the workshop (or alternatively prepare larger cards). Prepare the flipchart with the following headings written with a large amount of space between them, one under the other:

Higher risk

Medium risk

Lower risk

Task 1. Identifying HIV risk levels posed by a range of behaviours

Whole group. Explain that Handout 3A identifies a range of sexual or sexually-related behaviours that pose different levels of HIV risk. Lay your prepared set of sexual behaviour cards on a table and let participants take turns picking a card and sticking it on the flipchart at the level of risk they think appropriate.

Discussion. When all the cards have been placed on the flipchart, ask participants to discuss the position of each card. Encourage them to give reasons for their responses.

- 1. Do you agree or disagree with the placement of any of the cards?
- 2. Did you misunderstand the placement of any of the cards?
- 3. Did you find it difficult to place your card?
- 4. Whose risk did you consider when placing each card?
- 5. Do male and female participants perceive different levels of risk for certain behaviours because they identify more with the male/female partner?
- 6. Do you need to know other factors before you place a card at a particular level, e.g. the age of the sexual partners?

- 7. What if people practise a combination of behaviours? (Facilitator can cluster some cards and suggest that this will raise the risks even further; use the behaviours in Zama's story to illustrate.)
- 8. What other behaviours could fit in the high risk/medium risk/low risk levels?



Remind participants that Task 1 showed that the risks and levels of risk usually depend on the context and factors in the context, e.g. age, culturally gendered roles and power relations of the partners. Participants will now look more closely at these particular factors.

Task 2. Looking at factors that predispose people (women in particular) to HIV infection

Whole group. Distribute Handout 3B and explain that these factors might raise or lower the risk posed by a particular behaviour or behaviours. To give an example, place the 'substance abuse' card from the 'factors affecting sexual behaviour' set next to the 'non-penetrative sex' card from the 'sexual behaviour' set. Does this make a difference to its position? Let a participant move the two cards to the level they now consider appropriate (possibly medium risk of penetration occurring under the influence, leading to infection) and ask them to justify their choice.

Now let participants choose 'factors affecting sexual behaviour' cards. They can take turns placing their cards next to a 'sexual behaviour' card and discuss how and why it affects the risk level of the behaviour. Let the other participants respond. Some 'factors affecting sexual behaviour' cards (e.g. 'substance abuse') might apply to many behaviours, and others to only one or a few. Some are neutral, e.g. 'age'. For these, participants should explain how age factors will affect risk levels for each partner in different ways according to the age of each participant and how age-disparate they are.

Use as many of the cards as possible in the available time. Ask participants if any factors haven't been covered in the cards, especially factors in the lives of their own learners.

LENGTH:



TOPIC 5. GENDER AND HIV TESTING

MATERIALS

- · Flipchart paper, markers
- Flipchart/PowerPoint presentation
- Background information page 143

Task. Examining levels of HIV counselling and testing take-up

Whole class. Present the following information on a flipchart or in a PowerPoint presentation:

The launch of the national HIV counselling and testing campaign in April 2010 resulted in a remarkable increase in the number of people accessing testing. Between 2008 and 2012, annual HIV testing increased from an estimated 19.9 per cent to 37.5 per cent among men, and from 28.7 per cent to 52.6 per cent among women. The higher testing figures seen among women have been attributed to the added effect of the prevention of mother-to-child transmission programme, which enables women to access HIV testing services when they go for antenatal appointments.

Source: Shisana et al. 2014

Small group discussion. Ask participants to discuss the following questions:

- 1. Who should get tested?
- 2. How can knowing your status help to address gender inequalities and HIV risk?

Report back. Lead the reportback (see suggested answers below). In wrapping up the task, emphasise that the figures for HIV counselling and testing reflect gender inequalities and cultural norms and also (in the increased uptake, especially by women) some positive trends and possibilities for empowerment.

Suggested answers

- 1. Every sexually active person should get tested, but especially anyone who:
 - has had unsafe sex
 - has had more than one partner
 - does not know the HIV status of their partner
 - is not sure if their partner is faithful
 - has had an STI within the past 10 years
 - has (or their partner has) used intravenous drugs and shared needles within the past 10 years.
- 2. The benefits of testing and knowing your status are:
 - It creates an opportunity for you to take responsibility for your sexual behaviour and your future and care for yourself.
 - It enables you to protect your partner/s from risk.

SUGGESTED FOLLOW-UP ACTIVITIES

- 1. Hold an HIV and AIDS Awareness Week at your school.
- 2. Invite a young person living with HIV to speak to learners during the Awareness Week.

USEFUL RESOURCES

Department of Basic Education. 2012. 2012. Integrated Strategy on HIV, STIs and TB 2012-2016. Pretoria: DBE.

Shisana, Olive, Rehle, T., Simbayi L.C., Zuma, K., Jooste, S., Zungu N., Labadarios, D., Onoya, D. et al. 2014. South African National HIV Prevalence, Incidence and Behaviour Survey, 2012. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

HANDOUT 1A. TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE ABOUT HIV AND AIDS AND GENDER

Read these statements about key issues related to HIV and AIDS and gender. In groups, decide if each statement is *True* or *False*. Give reasons for your answers.

STA	ATEMENTS	TRUE	FALSE	REASONS FOR YOUR ANSWERS
	The biological characteristics of a female increase her chances of getting HIV and AIDS.			
	A woman in a committed relationship doesn't have to worry about getting HIV and AIDS.			
	Risky sexual practices can be changed.			
	If you teach sexuality education in schools, you encourage young people to have sex.			
	The HIV-incidence rate among young females (15–24 years) is more than four times higher than for young males (15–24 years).			
	Learners are our best resource in HIV and AIDS prevention programmes.			

HANDOUT 1B. SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 1A

1. True

Even a single episode of unprotected intercourse is risky for women/girls who may be receiving infected semen from a male partner. The lining of the vagina is a large surface area and easily gets small lacerations (tears) which are gateways for infection. In addition, sexually transmitted diseases can go undetected in women/ girls, leaving them more susceptible to HIV transmission (Rees 1998).

2. False

Women in relationships may find it hard to negotiate safe sexual practices, especially when they face the threat of physical and sexual violence if they raise their concerns. This means we need to rethink the ABC (Abstain, Be faithful and Condomise) message in many school-based educational programmes. According to UNAIDS, women who have experienced violence are up to three times more likely to be infected with HIV than those who have not. Men's refusal to wear condoms, even in situations of consensual sex, increases the risk of infection for themselves and their female partners. Many males see sex as a way to prove their masculinity. They may have sex with multiple partners to express male virility, especially if they feel that their masculine identity is threatened (Morell 1999). The pressure to bear children also increases women's vulnerability to HIV infection.

3. True

Young people are a promising target group for HIV prevention programmes because their unsafe behavioural practices are less established than those of adults (UNAIDS 2000).

4. False

The idea that sexuality education may encourage young peoples' sexual activity seems to be unfounded. In a review of sex and HIV and AIDS education, it was found that "well designed programmes... are most usually associated with reduced levels of sexual activity in youth and with enhanced levels of use in those who are already sexually active" (UNAIDS 1999). Such programmes can promote the idea of values, life goals and relationship ideals that encourage young people to control and manage their sexuality. They can also challenge aggressive and violent ways of expressing masculinity which increase the risk of HIV transmission for male and female youth.

5. True

Among girls and women of 15-24 years, the HIV incidence rate is now four times higher than boys (Shisana et al. 2014). This is due to a combination of biological and social factors. Undoubtedly, violent sex increases the risk. In addition, desperate economic circumstances can pressure young women into survival sex with paying clients who demand unprotected sex (Campbell, Mzaidume and Williams 1998). The myth that AIDS can be cured by having sex with a virgin has increased the risk factor for girls. Some men seek out young girls for unprotected sex because they believe there is no danger of HIV infection (UNAIDS 2000).

6. True

Preventive education is most effective when young people are involved in the design and delivery of the programme. Peer education has been found to be the most successful means of changing attitudes in youth (UNAIDS 1999).



HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 2. ZAMA'S STORY

How did it start? Well, two of my friends were seeing older guys. They got such beautiful presents – new clothes and jewellery – and had such delicious meals. I could just smell the chicken takeaway when they came back! They talked about their boyfriends and I felt so left out and childish. Then one day this insurance salesman came to our school and I bumped into him outside the principal's office. He was so handsome, full of laughs and not so old – 35. He noticed me straight away and the next day he met me outside the school on my way home.

He kept telling me, "You are something so special! Gorgeous! A real princess!" No one had ever spoken to me like that. He gave me a lift home in his car on that day and for the rest of the week. He even gave me a cake and some meat to take home to my auntie who I stay with.

After he dropped me off, my auntie gave me a look and said, "Fancy boyfriend, hey? Fifteen is a bit young, my girl." But she took the food because there was hardly anything left to eat that day. Since she lost her job she is very depressed and she doesn't seem to care about much – things are very hard at home. I am not stupid – I knew that sex would be part of it, and on Monday the next week he parked in the veld, halfway to my place. It was not like I had imagined. I thought that this 'mature' guy who called me his 'princess' and said he wanted to look after me would use a condom and be loving and careful. Although I didn't know how to say it, that was what I wanted. I didn't want to risk perhaps getting infected, even with him. But immediately he just pulled off my clothes and really rushed me, roughly, so that I started feeling scared – suddenly, I really didn't want it. But he didn't even ask. And it hurt a lot.

Well, there was no choice but to let it happen. There was a lovely new top for me in a bag on the other seat, with a big box of biscuits – the latest presents. I knew something had to come from my side. Afterwards he was happy and laughing and I felt better about having no condom. He certainly looked like a very healthy man.

I still felt I was in love with him. I also thought that I was a big part of his life and perhaps it would last. But it only lasted a few weeks. In his job he meets lots of people. One day he said he had to work in another town for a while and I have not seen him again. Since then I have heard that he had another girlfriend from a school not so far away while he was with me!

I feel very, very bad. Firstly, I am pregnant. But that's not all. The clinic sister was very rude to me. She said, "Look what has happened! You have behaved like a slut. You should test for HIV too." So I did: I'm also HIV positive.

Discuss these questions:

- 1. What risky sexual behaviours can you identify in Zama's story?
- 2. What factors made Zama vulnerable to HIV infection? Were these factors all directly sex-related, or were there other factors? Give reasons for your answers.
- 3. What will happen next? What is at risk for her now and in the long term?
- 4. Do you agree with the clinic sister's view of Zama's behaviour? Give reasons for your answer.
- 5. Would you say that Zama has experienced GBV? Give reasons for your answer.

HANDOUT 3A: SEXUAL BEHAVIOUR





kissing and cuddling	transactional sex
polygamous marriage	sex with a condom
living together not married	multiple concurrent sexual partners
early sexual debut	ukithwala
forced or coerced sex	early marriage
naked non-penetrative sex	sex with all your clothes on
monogamous marriage	sex without a condom







HANDOUT 3B: FACTORS AFFECTING SEXUAL BEHAVIOUR		
HIV status known	age	poverty
substance abuse	orphaned	well-educated
employed	has a sexually transmitted infection	physical immaturity
traditional practices	poor school attendance	low literacy
physically mature	unemployed	mental disability
high ability/achievement	rural setting	away from regular partner/ spouse





low awareness of HIV transmission	urban setting	boredom
poor access to health services	low ability/achievement	sports/recreation facilities
role models	teen pregnancy	peer pressure
bullying at school	no adequate caregiver	unhealthy living environment
ignorance of rights	violence at home	poor nutrition





Educators as Facilitators of Healing



BACKGROUND INFORMATION

In addition to the following *Background information* on educators facilitating healing, also read the *Background information* on genderbased violence (GBV) for Workshop 1 (pages 16–27) before conducting Workshop 6.





This workshop is not intended to train participants to be counsellors, but rather empower them to do 'containment' and then refer to professionals.

Planning basic counselling training

Workshop 6 is a much longer workshop than others in this manual. This is because developing even basic counselling skills takes time. The workshop can, however, readily be shortened, divided into two workshops or delivered over a longer period of time as single training activities.

What are the psychological effects of violence against children?

Schools in societies where violence and neglect are common face a critical challenge to put their learners' well-being first; learners' personal well-being is vital for their development.

Developmental psychologists agree that certain key developmental values have to be nurtured in children very early in life: trust, competence, personal identity and an understanding of the meaning of life. Children who develop these qualities can progress properly in their emotional, cognitive and social development.

This means that educators need to understand what kind of school and classroom culture will help children acquire these basic values. They also need to understand what happens when a child has an experience where trust or any other basic values are violated. Educators have to consider how these qualities can be restored, since they are the basis for other capabilities like the ability to establish meaningful relationships, to carry out given tasks and to establish a firm identity status. These capabilities in turn equip the child to learn and to adjust to a school environment.

The importance of identifying children who have been abused

When educators consider basic counselling of learners (and possibly also of colleagues) who have suffered GBV, it is critical that they understand the impact of abuse on a person's identity and self-esteem. Abuse is by its nature entirely selfish, intrusive and compulsive. It means, literally, using someone wrongly – exploiting them for what you want and disregarding their own value or identity. If developing children come to adopt views of themselves as intrinsically worthless, it will obviously be very damaging to them and for their development.

Children often do not want to expose the humiliation of abuse to anyone else after it has happened, and many children suppress their conscious knowledge of it. The educator who is approached by a child or who approaches a child who shows signs of abuse consequently has a very delicate task. One of the critical problems of abuse, and one of the abuser's most effective weapons, is that a child's account of an event is seldom believed over an adult's. Adults tend to think that children tell lies, and accordingly discount their evidence.

It is therefore all-important that a child who has suffered abuse be listened to carefully and receptively and be treated with kindness and acceptance rather than disbelief, even if the educator has difficulties around the identity of the abuser or feels sceptical that abuse has occurred. The educator–counsellor's job is to support the child and hear his/her story, not to investigate the case. Believing the child's story affirms and validates his/her personal reality and identity, which have been threatened by the abuse.



What is basic counselling?

- Counselling is a process of helping another person to resolve his/her feelings in relation to a problematic situation.
- · It is about comforting and supporting a person.
- · It is about listening, reflecting, clarifying and summarising.
- · Counselling is not the same as giving advice, although sometimes giving advice may form part of counselling.

Why do people need basic counselling?

People need counselling for various reasons. These include but are not limited to the following:

- They could be vulnerable, overwhelmed, anxious, angry, sad, helpless, confused or frightened.
- They need guidance and support to understand what is happening and to solve the problem.
- They don't have someone they trust who they can talk to without feeling judged.
- · They don't have the skills needed to solve the problem.
- They feel apathetic.
- They don't have the confidence to solve the problem on their own.

Working through the basic counselling steps with learners of different ages

This workshop introduces a process that the educator-counsellor can use for different types of counselling with learners or adults of different age groups. The basic counselling steps represented are as follows:

- Step 1. Help the person to tell their story
- Step 2. Help the person to consider their current options
- Step 3. Help the person to make an action plan
- Step 4. Help the person to commit to implementing the plan

This is a useful sequence in that it fits both trauma counselling (used to help people stabilise after traumatic events such as rape) and ongoing personal counselling (used to overcome challenges and difficulties over a length of time). Even a small child who has just experienced GBV needs to be able to tell his/her story, think about what must be done, engage with a plan and accept it.

There is, however, a difference between counselling a child and an adult (or an older child). After traumatic abuse, the counsellor will suggest to the child the action to be taken, e.g. reporting the abuse, but an adult (the counselling educator or another support person) will also take the action. The counselling steps are used partly to help the child understand and 'own' the process and the action taken, although an adult is supporting them throughout. With an older child or adult who is dealing with problems linked to abuse, the counselling steps will be used to help the child/adult take fuller responsibility for the plan or decision and the action that follows.

Educators taking on a basic counselling and healing role

It is important to highlight the potential that educators have to be 'agents of change' and to create the sort of environment which supports healing processes. However, we also need to acknowledge that educators themselves often have attitudes and beliefs which will not help them support their learners and colleagues who have experienced abuse and are traumatised. Their own experiences of trauma may well be behind these attitudes and beliefs. Furthermore, the school, family and community environments in which educators live and work may increase the challenge of working sensitively with traumatised learners and colleagues. For this reason, it is very important to explore ideas about the healing process and the potential effects of GBV on children's identity, well-being and development (see Topic 1, page 171).

Educators may need support in managing destructive emotions which threaten the well-being and integration of traumatised learners and adults into society. They may need to look to their heritage of cultural and spiritual values and/or get professional help to provide support for emotionally disturbed adults and children. In the meantime, the ideas and strategies offered in this workshop should appeal to the common sense and compassion of most educators.

It is up to educators and schools to decide which educators should develop some counselling capacity and attend this workshop. If only one or a few educators can attend, these should probably be members of the school-based support team and those educators designated to deal with cases of GBV. Attendance of life orientation educators could also add value to the training. However, each school will have its own priorities.

Developing a Help Directory

In this workshop participants compile a Help Directory, i.e. a list of contacts to support efforts to counter and respond to GBV of learners and/or staff at school. Significant numbers of learners are likely to need more expert psychosocial support than an educator–counsellor with skills gained in this workshop will be able to offer. Similarly, anyone who supports children who have been raped or abused will need good contacts to support reporting and follow-up of the case. Most schools are not close enough to one-stop rape crisis centres (Thuthuzela Centres) and will need to make the best of the available policing, medical and welfare services. One way to provide support is simply to be there whenever the child is interviewed or examined, or to find a trusted person who can be there.

While contacts in the Help Directory could be drawn from a general list of contacts, the objective is to tailor-make the list to fit the specific needs of and the local resources available for each school. Such a list could be extended to include other contacts not directly relevant to GBV, but relevant to care and support needs of learners.

NOTES		

FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR

WorkShop 6

WORKSHOP LENGTH:

4 HOURS 30 MINUTES

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- · Provide information on basic counselling.
- Describe the behaviour and characteristics of an effective counsellor.
- Explore listening as an important counselling tool.
- Explore the use of guestioning techniques as an important counselling tool.
- · Identify and source information on useful resources in the school area.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- · Define counselling.
- List the steps involved in counselling.
- · Highlight the characteristics of an effective counsellor.
- Explain the importance and impact of good listening skills in a counsellor.
- List various forms of questioning techniques and the purpose of each of them.
- Compile a list of helpful resources in the school area.
- · Help children disclose abuse.

OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- Topic 1. Facts and misconceptions about trauma and healing (30 minutes)
- Topic 2. What is counselling? (30 minutes)
- Topic 3. The counselling process (30 minutes)
- Topic 4. The effective counsellor (30 minutes)
- Topic 5. Counselling skills (60 minutes)
- Topic 6. Compiling your own Help Dictionary (20 minutes)
- Topic 7. Facilitating disclosure and communicating with children (60 minutes)

MATERIALS

- Envelopes and paper clips/staples
- Flipchart
- · Markers (coloured)



WORKSHOP 6 HANDOUTS		
HANDOUT 1A	FACTS AND MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT TRAUMA AND HEALING	
HANDOUT 1B	SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 1A	
HANDOUT 2	STAGES IN THE COUNSELLING PROCESS	
HANDOUT 3	THE COUNSELLING PROCESS	
HANDOUT 4	TWO POOR COUNSELLING SESSIONS	
HANDOUT 5	COUNSELLOR CHARACTERISTICS AND BEHAVIOUR	
HANDOUT 6	REFLECTIVE LISTENING	
HANDOUT 7	REFLECTIVE LISTENING PRACTICE	
HANDOUT 8	ASKING QUESTIONS SKILFULLY	
HANDOUT 9	YOUR OWN HELP DIRECTORY	
HANDOUT 10	FACILITATING DISCLOSURE AND COMMUNICATING WITH CHILDREN	





GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 6

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



Read the Guidelines for facilitating activities focused on sensitive topics on pages 6 and 7. This contains important advice for every workshop in this manual.

Some specific concerns for Workshop 6 are:

The use of the term 'client'. The term 'client' is sometimes used in the handouts to refer to the person receiving counselling. If necessary, explain that this is simply a professional term: in this context it does not mean someone who pays for counselling.

Discussion of actual cases of abuse from their own schools. Teachers must do this very carefully without divulging any identifying details about the people involved. A learner who has confided in an educator needs to trust that this information will remain confidential. However, if there is a risk of further abuse, the learner needs to know that other people will have to be informed to provide assistance.



INTRODUCTION

Provide a broad overview of the workshop and, if necessary, give participants the opportunity to get to know you and the other participants. Then outline the objectives and outline of Workshop 6 more specifically and (if relevant) explain why you have organised more time for the workshop.

TOPIC 1. FACTS AND MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT TRAUMA AND HEALING

MATERIALS

- Handout 1A. Facts and misconceptions about trauma and healing
- · Handout 1B. Suggested responses to Handout 1A

Task. What do you know about trauma and healing?

Say to participants. We tend to formulate ideas and beliefs to help us cope with difficult life experiences. However, sometimes these beliefs are misconceptions: ideas and knowledge that get worked into our belief systems but which are not based on reason and which can sometimes be misleading about the problem we are facing. Let's look at some of these ideas and beliefs in order to help us support learners who suffer trauma.

Small groups. Refer groups to Handout 1A. Ask individual participants to respond True or False to the items. They can then let participants compare answers with group members. Ask each group to generate one fact and one misconception.

Feedback and discussion. Spend 2-3 minutes on feedback. Then refer groups to Handout 1B. Explain that these suggested answers are based on research. Allow groups time to compare and review their responses in relation to the handout.

In groups. Ask for volunteers from each group to describe how their attitudes and/or opinions changed in the discussion.

LENGTH:





The point is not to determine the 'correct answer' but how attitudes have changed.



TOPIC 2. WHAT IS COUNSELLING?

MATERIALS

- Markers
- Flipchart

Task 1. What is counselling?

Whole class. Divide the flipchart into two columns headed: Counselling is... and Counselling isn't.... Record participants' ideas on the flipchart.

Ask participants:

- · What do you think counselling is?
- · What do you think counselling isn't?

Suggested answers

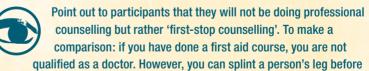
Counselling is listening, talking, helping, dealing with problems, coping with feelings.

Counselling is a bit like holding up a mirror to the person being counselled. For example, a mirror will show you what the expression on your face is and the objects that are behind you. Counselling helps you see things about yourself and your situation, but it does not take any action or make any changes. The changes and the action need to be implemented by you for yourself.

Counselling isn't a casual chat; solving someone else's problems for him/her; or instructing someone what to do.

Counselling isn't handing your problems to someone else to 'fix' for you. However, sometimes counsellors do have to take action. For example, if a child tells a counsellor that he/she is being abused, the counsellor should take action and must not expect the child to solve the situation on his/her own. Make sure this is clear to the participants. Telling the counsellor is the child's way of asking for help. In such a situation, the counsellor must take action on behalf of the child and also help the child cope with fear, inappropriate guilt and confusion and see the way forward more confidently.

NOTE:



helping to move them to hospital, where a doctor will set the broken leg. 'First-stop counselling' is about offering people 'emotional first aid'. In many cases they will refer their 'client' to a professional, an organisation or someone on the network list who can help the client specifically.

The job of a 'first-stop counsellor' is to be a listener and a shoulder for the help-seeker to cry on, if necessary. Their role is very important because they are the first person to whom a child can turn for reassurance and help. It is essential that they know how to offer emotional support.

Task 2. Why do people need counselling?

Ask participants. There are many different forms and levels of GBV and its consequences that necessitate counselling for the abused learner or colleague. What experiences do you encounter in people at school that would result in the need for counselling?

Brainstorm. Let participants brainstorm ideas which you can record on the flipchart.

Suggested answers

Encourage and accept a wide range of experiences. Some examples are:

- · Persistent shouting of obscene remarks on the way to school and back, or in the corridors at school.
- Anonymous sexual threats by SMS.
- Persistent touching or sexual violation by another learner at school, or an older person (e.g. an educator or relative) at home or at school.
- · Persistent sexual invitations from a peer or older person.
- A boyfriend forcing sex.
- · Gang rape.
- Intergenerational affairs gone wrong.
- Pregnancy resulting from an abusive affair or rape.
- Possibility of infection with HIV or sexually transmitted infection for the same reasons.

Brainstorm. Then brainstorm these questions: Why do people need counselling when they experience these kinds of abuse? What types of fears, emotions and thoughts underlie this need? Record suggestions on the flipchart.

Suggested answers

There will be many acceptable answers, all of which amount to the person who is facing problems not being able to solve these effectively by themselves. For example:

- · People are often too vulnerable, overwhelmed, anxious, angry, sad, frightened, etc. to understand what is happening and/or to be able to solve their own problems – they feel helpless and powerless.
- People don't always have someone they trust or can talk to without being judged.
- People haven't had the opportunity to learn the skills needed to solve certain problems; they don't know how to go about solving these.
- People feel apathetic; they hope their problems will go away even if they do nothing.
- · People don't have the confidence to solve the problems on their own.
- People are confused, or feel the problem can't be solved; they are frightened to change.

Point out to participants that seeking counselling is not a sign of weakness or stupidity. Rather, it can help people to understand what is happening to them and assist them to develop new skills and knowledge which they can use to take better control of their own lives. Young children can't of course take full charge of their situation, but they can be helped to understand it better and to own the action that is taken.





TOPIC 3. THE COUNSELLING PROCESS

MATERIALS

· Handout 2. Stages in the counselling process

There are three parts to the handout and together all the parts make up a set. You need one complete set for each group in the workshop.

Cut Part 1 into its four sections. Staple together in the wrong order.

Cut Part 2 into four sections. Staple together in the wrong order.

Cut Part 3 into four sections. Staple together in the wrong order.

· Handout 3. The counselling process

Task 1. What are the stages of counselling?

Group work. Give each group a set of Part 1 from Handout 2, stapled together in the wrong order. Ask groups to think about the stages of the counselling process and to put the four strips into the correct order.

Check that each group has the correct order.

Answers for Task 1

- 1. Help the person to tell their story.
- 2. Help the person to consider their current options.
- 3. Help the person to make an action plan.
- 4. Help the person to commit to implementing the plan.

Task 2. What happens in counselling?

Group work. Give each group a set of Part 2, stapled together in the wrong order. Ask them to match each strip to a section from Part 1. Check that each group has made the correct matches.

Answers for Task 2

What happens: The person needs to think about what possible actions could be taken now to improve the situation. Stage 2. Help the person to consider his/her current options.

What happens: A concrete plan for future behaviour should be formulated. Stage 3. Help the person to make an action plan.

What happens: The person must be mentally prepared to commit to the actions. Stage 4. Help the person to commit to implementing the plan.

What happens: The person is filled with details and feelings about a problem. Stage 1. Help the person to tell his story.

Task 3. What is your role?

Group work. Give each group a set of Part 3, stapled together in the wrong order. Ask them to match these to the correct sections from Parts 1 and 2. Check that each group has made the correct matches and clarify any misunderstandings. Refer participants to Handout 3 which contains the correct answers.

TOPIC 4. THE EFFECTIVE COUNSELLOR

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Markers
- · Handout 4. Two poor counselling sessions
- · Handout 5. Counsellor characteristics and behaviour

Task 1. What happens in a poor counselling session?

Say to participants. We are going to demonstrate two poor counselling sessions. Watch carefully and make notes of what we are doing wrong.

Role-play. Ask two participants to volunteer to be your clients - one for each of the counselling sessions. Give each volunteer a copy of Handout 4 and ask each to read a different script.

They will need a few minutes to read through the scripts before demonstrating each counselling session by reading out the script that has been assigned to them.

Discussion and feedback. What mistakes were made in each counselling session? Encourage participants to share their ideas with the whole class. Summarise points on the flipchart.

Suggested answers for Task 1

Scene 1

- · Not making the client feel welcome or important
- · Making the client feel like she is a burden on the counsellor
- · Being judgmental
- Jumping to conclusions (assumes the client is giving the auntie a hard time)
- Taking sides (counsellor appears from the start to be sympathising with the aunt instead of empathising with the client)
- Not paying attention to the person's feelings
- Moralising
- Breaking confidentiality (Zizi's story should not be revealed to anyone else)
- · Comparing the client with others
- Insulting the client by referring to her weight.

Scene 2

- · Showing shock
- Passing judgment
- · Criticising; running the person down
- Finishing the client's sentence for him assuming what he was going to say
- · Not trying to see the client's actions through the client's eyes
- · Not listening to the client.





Task 2. What are the characteristics of a good counsellor?

Discussion. What characteristics do participants think an effective counsellor should have?

Feedback. List the characteristics they offer on the flipchart.

Suggested answers for Task 2

A counsellor should:

- be attentive, supportive, non-judgmental
- make the 'client' feel at home and comfortable
- respect confidentiality
- try to build trust, listen, etc.

(See Handout 5 to enrich the discussion.)

Task 3. Information handout

Whole group. Refer participants to Handout 5. If there is time, go through it with participants and give an overview of a few of the most important points.

TOPIC 5. COUNSELLING SKILLS

TOPIC 5.1. LISTENING (30 MINUTES)

MATERIALS

- · Handout 6. Reflective listening
- · Handout 7. Reflective listening practice

Task 1. What is reflective listening?

Whole group discussion. Tell participants that listening is one of the most important skills in counselling. One listening technique is called reflective listening.

- 1. What kinds of things reflect objects?
- 2. What do we mean when we say that these things reflect objects?
- 3. If I tell you that reflective listening is like being a mirror, what do you think I mean?

Suggested answers for Task 1

- 1. Mirrors, water, clean glass, metal, etc.
- 2. They show an image of the object.
- 3. When we use reflective listening, we give the other person an image of the events (the content) he/she is speaking about and the feelings and emotion he/she is revealing.

Say to participants. Reflective listening is a tool to allow a counsellor to show empathy. In other words, he/she is trying to stand in the client's shoes and see how the client experiences the situation. This is not the same as sympathy which involves showing pity for another person.

Counsellors should show warmth and caring but they should not show pity, because pity encourages a client to feel inferior and helpless.





Participants may need a clear definition of these terms:

Empathy – the ability to identify with and understand another person's point of view

Sympathy – a feeling of pity for the distress or suffering of another person





Task 2. Practice reflective listening

Whole class. Distribute Handout 6 and read through it together. Volunteers can read aloud the clients' roles in each of the four examples.

Pair work. Then ask participants to work in pairs to complete the activity in Handout 7.

Whole group. Discuss the answers in the large group.

Answers for Task 2

- **1 a.** is the best response. The other answers are less effective because:
 - b. is not a full reflection of what the client has said.
 - c. the counsellor is just 'parroting' the client's words instead of putting them into his/her own words.
- **2 b.** is the best response. The other answers are less effective because:
 - **a.** the counsellor is not connecting in any way with the client's deep and traumatic feelings. The counsellor is telling the client what to do.
 - c. 'frustrated' is an inadequate way to paraphrase the urge to commit suicide.
- **3 c.** is the best response. The other answers are less effective because:
 - **a.** the counsellor is being judgmental, prejudiced, falsely reassuring *and* is denying the client's feelings.
 - **b.** the counsellor has introduced something the client has not said; he did not mention that sexual intercourse was part of the relationship, although it is a romantic one.
- 4 a. is the best response. The other answers are less effective because:
 - **b.** the counsellor is assuming things by implying that the client did perhaps know what was going on; also, she did not say that her daughter was left alone with her brother
 - there may have been others at home too; and she did not say that her brother was buying the groceries only giving financial help.
 - **c.** the counsellor is offering reflection of feeling without reflection of content, and is overstating and over-interpreting the client's feelings.

NOTE:



Advise participants to practise reflective listening responses as often as possible, at home and with colleagues. They could choose a partner from the workshop and take turns at school to practise with one another.

This technique needs careful thought and concentration and takes quite a long time to master. But it is extremely useful in all human interactions, not just in counselling situations. It is well worth developing as a life skill.

TOPIC 5.2: ASKING QUESTIONS (30 MINUTES)

MATERIALS

- · Flipchart and paper
- Markers
- · Handout 8. Asking questions skilfully

Task 3. Closed, leading and probing questions

Whole group discussion. Explain to participants that asking questions is another essential counselling skill, but these can be used incorrectly in a counselling session. Discuss the following:

- 1. What is a closed question?
- 2. What is a leading question?
- 3. What is a probing question?

Write their responses on the flipchart.

Task 4. What is the best way to ask questions?

Whole group. Ask participants to discuss:

- 1. Why shouldn't you ask too many questions during a single counselling session?
- 2. When would you use closed questions in a counselling session?
- 3. What is the problem with leading questions in a counselling session?
- 4. Give an example of a probing question.
- 5. Why is the timing of questions important in a counselling session?
- 6. Why do you think clients might find it difficult to answer 'why' questions in a counselling session?

Distribute Handout 8. Go through it with participants, with reference to the previous discussion.

Individually. Practise asking questions at home. As an exercise, consciously think about the type of questions you ask.

Suggested answers for Task 3

1. Closed questions.

These require a short direct response like "Yes" or "No" or other one-word answer. For example: "Are you tired?" or "How old are you?"

2. Leading questions.

Lead the person to answer in a certain way. For example: "Don't you agree that all people should disclose their HIV status?" It is hard for a person to answer "No" to this kind of question and he/she will probably say "Yes," even if he/she disagrees.

3. Probing questions.

Explore things more deeply. For example: "How did you feel about your son after your granddaughter told you he sexually abused her?"

Note: Probing questions are an important part of counselling. But they can make a client feel uncomfortable if he/she does not want to talk about certain matters. Clients should not be pushed to discuss sensitive issues before they are ready. They must trust you first, and then they might mention the more sensitive issue themselves.



TOPIC 6. COMPILING YOUR OWN HELP DIRECTORY

MATERIALS

· Handout 9. Your own Help Directory

Task. Which professionals can help?

Explain to participants. If you are going to counsel learners (and possibly also colleagues) who have suffered abuse, your skills will be in high demand! Moreover, there are other issues apart from GBV which will put learners into crisis situations or face them with very difficult decisions. Many of the issues are related: children who are living with poverty or neglect are much more vulnerable to abusers: they may have no adult caregiver, or their caregiver may be sick and unable to care for them properly.

You will therefore need to refer many learner cases on to other professionals or support resources, for various reasons: either for more expert counselling or therapy, or for medical attention, intervention by a social worker or the South African Police Service (Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences Unit) or perhaps for grant applications, food parcels, child care facilities for younger siblings, and so on. Also the counselling load may be too much for an educator–counsellor who has other responsibilities in the school.

For this reason, your own Help Directory will make your work easier.

Brainstorm in groups. Brainstorm a list of the kinds of people, departments and organisations participants may work with. Include the most prominent players in different areas and fields and non-governmental organisations in their areas.

Individually. Refer participants to Handout 9. Participants could compile a list in the workshop and add contact details later, or develop the directory after the workshop, if time is short.

Note: The directory should include each organisation's name, address, contact details and a list of its services.

TOPIC 7. FACILITATING DISCLOSURE AND COMMUNICATING WITH CHILDREN

MATERIALS

- Flipchart and paper
- Markers
- Handout 10. Facilitating disclosure and communicating with children

Task. Eliciting ideas: 'jigsaw' activity



Assess how you should deal with the information on the handout according to the time you have and the participants you are working with. However, spend plenty of time on the activity. The handout information covers many aspects of counselling, but in an integrated way. Therefore, if information and tasks are rushed, one or another important aspect will be missed.

In groups. Prepare flipchart response sheets for four separate groups of participants. On each sheet write one of the four headings with questions (A, B, C and D) below. (The headings are from Handout 10.) Leave space for answers on each sheet.

A. Disclosure

Do all children disclose abuse spontaneously (readily, without being asked)? If they don't, why don't they?

- 1. Do all children tell everything that happened (disclose fully)? If they don't, why don't they?
- 2. Do all children stick to their story, or do they sometimes withdraw it/go back on it? Why might they do this?

B. Preparing to interview children after abuse

- 1. If you think a child has been abused or a child who shows those signs wants to talk to you, what things would you need to think about before interviewing the child?
- 2. How would you prepare (a) the space and (b) yourself before the interview?

C. In the interview. What things should you be careful to do:

- 1. As you start off the interview?
- 2. During the interview?
- 3. On closing the interview?
- 4. In following up the interview?



6 GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

Furthermore:

- 5. How would you respond to a caregiver of the child who was present?
- 6. What role would you expect the caregiver to play?

D. Feelings children may find difficult to manage after abuse

- 1. What are some of the difficult feelings children might have?
- 2. Offer suggestions for things that you should be careful to do (and if relevant *not* do) in order to help them manage these feelings.

Distribute *one* of these four sheets to each group. Give the groups about 10–15 minutes to respond to their questions. Encourage groups to draw partly on ideas that have already come up in earlier activities. If they are stuck, ask them a few questions based on the information in Handout 10. Each group should choose a reporter.

Feedback. Let each group display their chart of ideas. Let the large group respond to each group's ideas and add their own. Distribute Handout 10. Raise and discuss any important ideas under headings 1–4 that have not come up in the 'jigsaw' activity.

USEFUL RESOURCES

AusAID. 2013. "An Introduction to Counselling Concepts."

MIET Africa and KwaZulu-Natal Department of Education. 2009. *Education for All. A Guide to Building Schools as Inclusive Centres of Learning, Care and Support*. Durban: MIET Africa.

Workshop developed as part of "Speak Out! Addressing Sexual Abuse and Violence Against Children and Youth," a project implemented jointly by Ministries of Education and MIET Africa through Care and Support for Teaching and Learning (CSTL). SADC.

NOTES		

HANDOUT 1A. FACTS AND MISCONCEPTIONS ABOUT TRAUMA AND HEALING

Carefully read each statement and decide if it is *True* or *False*. Tick the appropriate column and make short notes on reasons for your response.

STATEMENT	TRUE	FALSE	REASONS FOR YOUR RESPONSE
1. Time does not heal all wounds.			
2. Anger isn't helpful to the healing process.			
3. Survivors of trauma need to know they weren't to blame for what happened to them.			
4. It's important to forget traumatic events in order to move on with life.			
5. Acknowledging how abuse affects key areas of development – cognitive, social and emotional – has a healing effect for both front-line caregivers and the children who have been affected.			
6. Educators need training in how to respond to the effect that trauma has on children's ability to concentrate and remember their school work.			
7. Traumatic events strengthen a person's character.			
Sympathy, not issues like culture and language, is what counts in dealing with children who have been abused.			

HANDOUT 1B. SUGGESTED RESPONSES TO HANDOUT 1A

Discuss in small groups.

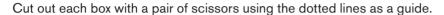
- 1. All events, including traumatic ones, influence the way we understand and respond to the world. However, victims of trauma do have a choice in the way they choose to put meaning to an event.
- 2. Anger is a normal response to a threatening situation. Accepting anger as a human reaction is important for validation of an experience. How one chooses to express anger is the key.
- 3. Acts of violence are not the responsibility of the person they are directed at. Rather, these acts are the sole responsibility of the aggressor.
- 4. All events in our life influence how we see our world and live in it. Denying an event consciously does not reduce our reactions on other levels. This is why feelings can be triggered long after an event has occurred. It is not so much forgetting the event, but processing the event so that the trauma is resolved and we can move on emotionally, that is important.
- 5. Trauma disturbs normal development. Educating both a victim and caregiver on this reduces the risk of judgment and trying to push a recovery period too
- 6. Children need validation, i.e. they need their real experiences and feelings to be recognised and responded to. At school, trauma effects often go unrecognised and are interpreted as a period of academic failure (e.g. when a child is preoccupied because they are struggling with a traumatic event, school marks may suffer). If an educator knows this, he/she can find other ways to validate and reassure a child.
- 7. Some abused children survive and lead successful lives while others sustain permanent damage.
- 8. Empathy, the ability to identify with and understand another person's point of view, is very important in a counselling situation. Empathy enables us to take factors like culture and language, which are important, into account. For example, some children cannot talk about sexual issues across genders (e.g. a female child with a male counsellor). In some cultures, you may not discuss sexual issues with older people. Children may feel unable to disclose to adults, especially those in authority. Children may not have the language to describe their experiences or feelings or they may be uncomfortable using certain words.





HANDOUT 2. STAGES IN THE COUNSELLING PROCESS

Part 1. Stages







Help the person to commit to implementing the plan

Help the person to make an action plan

Help the person to consider their current options

Help the person to tell their story

Part 2. What happens?

Cut out each box with a pair of scissors using the dotted lines as a guide.



What happens The person needs to think about what possible actions could be taken now to improve the situation. Often, they think, "I can't do anything. The situation is hopeless." However, there is usually an option, even if it is not ideal. They need to start thinking in creative and enterprising ways.

What happens The person must be mentally prepared to commit to the actions that will lead to the constructive changes that they want. This is because a list or plan is not helpful unless they are determined and prepared to put it into practice.

What happens After listing ideas and potential solutions, a concrete plan for future behaviour should be formulated, or the solution will remain a thought and not something that becomes a reality. A set of steps could involve reporting something to the police, visiting a clinic, making an application for something, etc., and following up on these actions afterwards.

What happens The person is filled with details and feelings about a problem when he/she approaches the counsellor. These need to be spoken about: What happened? What did they try to do or decide not to do? What did they feel about what happened?

Part 3. Your role

Cut out each box with a pair of scissors using the dotted lines as a guide.



Your role is to help the person gain clarity.

Often emotions and a jumble of details make the person telling the story sound vague and confused. It may become clearer through digging deeper into the person's background/home/other situations that relate to their problem.

Together, you must come to a joint understanding of the person's experiences, feelings and behaviours. There may be a few different problems: which are the most important ones?

Your role is to help the person make a firm commitment to following through on the decisions.

When will 'x' be done? What will be done to overcome obstacles to doing 'x'? Depending on the person's age, at least some of the actions might be taken by them.

Usually you, the counsellor, commit to meeting them again at a later stage, to look at progress together and to offer them ongoing emotional support. Sometimes, if something has to be reported by an adult on behalf of a child or if mediation is required, the counsellor will make a firm commitment to that action.

Your role is to help the person make a decision and then formulate a plan to put their decision into action.

What are the logical steps that could be taken? What daily or weekly goals does the person think they could attain and stick to?

At this point, they could write down these things, together with you, the counsellor.

Your role (after the core problem has been clarified) is to help the person to brainstorm ways of dealing with it.

Sometimes the person has a 'blind spot' about a problem, or needs help listing the pros and cons of a particular solution. You must help them think 'out of the box' and provide information on agencies and resources for help that might not yet have been considered (specialists, organisations, government departments or medical personnel).



HANDOUT 3. THE COUNSELLING PROCESS

Stage 1. Help the person to tell his/her story

What happens The person is filled with details and feelings about a problem when they approach the counsellor. These need to be spoken about: What happened? What did they try to do or decide not to do? What did they feel about what happened?

Your role is to help the person gain clarity.

Often emotions and a jumble of details make the person telling the story sound vague and confused. It may become clearer through digging deeper into the person's background/home/other situations that relate to their problem. Together, you must come to a joint understanding of the person's experiences, feelings and behaviours. There may be a few different problems, but which are the most important ones?

Stage 2. Help the person to consider his/her current options

What happens The person needs to think about what possible actions could be taken now to improve the situation. Often, they think, "I can't do anything. The situation is hopeless." However, there is usually an option, even if it is not ideal. They need to start thinking in a creative and enterprising way.

Your role, after the core problem has been clarified, is to help the person to brainstorm ways of dealing with it.

Sometimes the person has a blind spot about a problem, or needs help in listing the pros and cons of a particular solution. You must help them think 'out of the box' and provide information on agencies and resources for help that might not yet have been considered (specialists, organisations, government departments or medical personnel).

Stage 3. Help the person to make an action plan

What happens After listing ideas and potential solutions, a concrete plan for future behaviour should be formulated, or the solution will remain a thought and not something that becomes a reality. A set of steps could involve reporting something to the police, visiting a clinic or making an application for something, for example, and following up on these actions afterwards.

Your role is to help the person to make a decision and then a plan to put the decision into action.

What are the logical steps that could be taken? What daily or weekly goals does the person think they could attain and stick to? At this point, they could write these things down, together with you, the counsellor.

Stage 4. Help the person commit to implementing the plan

What happens The person must be mentally prepared to commit to the actions which will lead to the constructive changes they want. This is because a list or plan is not helpful unless they are determined and prepared to put it into practice.

Your role is to help the person make a firm commitment to following through on the decisions.

When will 'x' be done? What will be done to overcome obstacles to doing 'x'? Depending on the person's age, at least some of the actions might be taken by them. Usually you, the counsellor, commit to meeting them again at a later stage, to look at progress together and for you to offer ongoing emotional support. Sometimes, if something has to be reported by an adult on behalf of a child, or if mediation is required, the counsellor will make a firm commitment to that action.

HANDOUT 4: TWO POOR COUNSELLING SESSIONS

Script 1. (The client stays with her auntie and is being abused by her cousin.)

Counsellor: This has been such a busy day for me. So much to do and so

little time! Eish! (Yawning and looking out of the window as if not

interested.) So tell me quickly now, what's your problem?

Client: Well, since my parents died last year, I've been staying with my

auntie and I am not feeling happy.

Counsellor: (Wagging a finger.) Well, you know, there are always problems

> when you have to take on someone else's children, because you adolescents don't give us adults an easy time. You are very lucky to have someone to give you a home. Now Zizi from Grade 7 was telling me yesterday that she lives in a shack and has to do sex for food. You are better off than she is, so you must not be unhappy. I

hope you are grateful to your auntie.

Client: Oh yes, I am very grateful but it's just that I feel she doesn't like me

and resents having me there. I feel very bad all the time at home,

also because

Counsellor: Well, she probably does resent you. You can't really blame her for

that. You're another mouth to feed and it looks like you eat a lot.

Client: (Upset and getting up to leave.) I know I am overweight, but that

doesn't mean I deserve what has been happening in my life. I am

going now.

Script 2. (A male learner has at last disclosed his HIV status to his girlfriend.)

Counsellor: And what happened then?

Client: Well, I told her that I had HIV.

(Looking shocked, gasping.) Haha! You didn't? Counsellor:

Client: Yes, I did!

Counsellor: No! No! No! That is completely wrong! How could you do that?

Client: Well, I wanted to ...

Counsellor: (Interrupting the client while he was still speaking.) You wanted to

> end the relationship. And you were too scared to tell her. So you told her you were HIV positive because you thought that she would

end the relationship. That's what you wanted isn't it?

Client: (Looking confused.) Err, um, no. That isn't what I wanted. I just

thought it would help our relationship if I was honest with her.



HANDOUT 5. COUNSELLOR CHARACTERISTICS AND BEHAVIOUR

How should an effective counsellor behave?

- 1. Show warmth, genuineness and empathy
- 2. Be able to communicate well and build relationships
- 3. Care for yourself, and de-stress when you need to
- 4. Always be ready to learn more
- 5. Offer a supportive, caring environment in which people can talk comfortably
- 6. Show genuine interest and respect towards people from all walks of life
- 7. Have patience, understanding and the ability to listen non-judgmentally
- 8. Use objectivity and tact
- 9. Be able to motivate and inspire people
- 10. Be able to facilitate communication in groups of people
- 11. Have good organisational and planning skills
- 12. Work effectively with other professionals and community agencies
- 13. Enjoy working with people
- 14. Be able to respect and keep strict confidentiality.

How must you act during a counselling session?

1. Use trauma counselling for a learner who is traumatised by abuse

You could be the first person a traumatised learner confides in after experiencing or witnessing violent crime or assault, or being abused by a family member in their own home. Abuse by someone who is supposed to care is deeply distressing and potentially damaging. Your reaction will be very important to this child's healing.

- Make sure the learner is safe from immediate harm. Determine if there are any signs of injury or abuse that should be treated by a doctor.
- Listen very closely and carefully to what the learner is saying. Gently ask
 questions which begin with 'how', 'where' and 'who' in order to clarify the
 situation.
- Don't ask why the abuse happened. This will make the learner feel they are to blame. Rather, let the learner know you believe what they are telling you.
- Tell the learner the abuse is not their fault and that you are very sad that this has happened.
- Let the learner talk about their feelings, and give comfort and support. He/she will need to feel safe and protected.
- Don't force your own opinions or interpretations about what has happened or assume that you know what the learner feels or thinks. It is very important that their real feelings be validated. Listen carefully in order to understand these properly.
- Keep your facial expression and body language calm, relaxed, open and responsive. Gently encourage the learner to say what they need and want to say. Don't show shock or horror, even if dreadful details are revealed – this can heighten distress. Just show warm support.
- Ask the learner if you should contact a friend, relative or neighbour.
- Tell the learner you will help but don't make promises about what you will do.
- Ask the learner what he/she would like you to do next. The child may not be able to tell you directly but it will make her/him feel more in control.

Confidentiality: When a learner confides in you, you need to respect this trust by not sharing the learner's story with other educators, learners or parents.

However, if the learner is in danger of being further abused, you need to explain that you must tell someone who can try to stop the abuse: the principal, a social worker, a parent or another service agency. In cases of child abuse, the Family Violence, Child Abuse and Sexual Abuse Unit must be contacted. Emphasise that this is necessary to stop the abuse.

Remember: Your role is to report the abuse and support the learner. You should not investigate the case to determine if the child's account is true. However, do help to ensure that the investigation does not involve further trauma and secondary abuse for the child by supporting them at key steps in the process, or using someone they trust from the support network around your school community. The better the support network established by you and/or your school, the more consistently safe this process will be.

What should you avoid doing?

Don't block the client's emotions by saying things like:

- "Don't cry."
- "Anger is witchcraft the Bible says so."
- "When you see what other people have to go through, you can just count your blessings!"

Instead, allow the person to work through his/her emotions.

Don't generalise or trivialise by saying things like:

"All teenagers think their parents are unreasonable."

"It can't be as bad as all that!"

Instead, you should take the person's concerns seriously.

Don't moralise by saying things like:

"Abortion is so wrong! Even if you were raped that is no excuse to murder an unborn child!"

"If I was in your shoes I'd leave that guy!"

It is not helpful to impose your own values and morals on the person, because what is right for you is not necessarily right for the other person.

Don't falsely agree (if you don't feel the same way about a generalisation that the client has made):

Client: "All men are insensitive and selfish."

Counsellor: "Yes." (Wrong response - especially if this counsellor is happily

married to a sensitive and generous man)

Client: "All men are insensitive and selfish."

Counsellor: "In your experience it must seem that way." (Right response - the

> counsellor is acknowledging the reality of the client's feelings and circumstances without agreeing that all men are insensitive and

selfish)

Acceptance of another person's viewpoint does not necessarily mean agreement with it.

Don't reassure glibly by saying things like:

"Everything will work out, don't worry."

"He won't attack you again. I'm sure he learnt his lesson when your brother chased him away!"

It is possible to be hopeful, but you don't know if things will definitely work out well. When things do not go the way you said they would, the client will stop trusting you. If you are sensible and realistic, you will be more helpful to the client.

Don't guess answers by saying things like:

"The reason why she's acting that way is because she is simply jealous!"

"The only solution is to try harder."

Telling the client the answer is not helpful. Assist the person to arrive at her own answer.

Don't tell the person what to do by saying things like:

"You must go to the principal and tell her that ... "

"You have to disclose to your new boyfriend that you are HIV positive after the rape."

Help even a young child to decide for him/herself as far as possible. You are not the expert in another person's life, nor do you have to live with the consequences of their decision. They do! However, when you are supporting a child after abuse, you can take action for them without dictating to them. Ensure that they understand and engage fully with the steps you are taking on their behalf.

Don't move away from what the person is telling you:

Client: "When I saw him that night he said he was going to leave me. I was

shocked."

Counsellor: "Tell me about who you get support from," or "What were you

wearing at the time?"

Deal with the content the person has presented. Don't ask irrelevant questions.

HANDOUT 6. REFLECTIVE LISTENING

Reflection is a crucial skill which helps the people being counselled to feel that you are 'walking beside them', and that you are trying to see the situation through their eyes. It helps you to show empathy for clients.

It involves restating the main points of what the person has said using your own words, without adding anything new (e.g. your own thoughts, opinions or conclusions). By doing this, you become a 'mirror', helping the person to see him/ herself and his/her feelings and situation more clearly.

Step 1. Reflection of content (also called summarising)

In doing this, you reflect the 'story' the person tells you. This skill is useful, particularly during Stage 1 of the counselling process, because:

- It tells the person that you are listening and want to understand.
- It allows you to check that you've got it right and actually do understand. The client can tell you if you don't.

Do not talk about the person's deeper feelings yet because:

- · Reflecting the person's deepest feelings may be too threatening at the beginning of counselling.
- · You may be unsure of the true, underlying feelings or conflict. These feelings might emerge later and should be reflected then.

Example 1:

Client: For about six months, my boyfriend has been drinking and then

> getting violent if I refuse sex because he is drunk. Yesterday he hit me again after school so I just went home. I am worried that he will come to my place and upset my family, and I am battling to study for my Grade 12 exams. I complained and threatened to break up. twice. When he is not drunk, he says sorry, please don't break up. he will try to change. But then it continues. What can I do?

Counsellor: You've been subjected to your boyfriend's drinking and physical

abuse for quite a while. You fear he will harm your family and your relationship problems will impact on your studies. He hasn't changed after two threats to break it off with him and you now want

to reach a decision.

Step 2. Reflection of feelings (these may be explicit [i.e. clear] or implied [i.e. suggested])

When the person begins to feel fully understood and comfortable, he/she will usually progress to the next stage and reveal - explicitly or implicitly - how the situation is for him/her. Then you can start to reflect the person's feelings.

The 'safer' a client feels with a counsellor, the more he/she is likely to share his/her deeper feelings, but these may not always be obvious to him/her. When you reflect feelings, you help the client understand what is going on deep inside him/her.

Example 2:

Client: I like school and I want to do well so I can study further and get

a good job to look after my brothers and sisters. But my granny's





pension doesn't cover our needs and I have to do nearly all the work at home while she cares for the children. I get so tired and struggle to keep up! It feels as if no one really understands how hard it is. That's why when my teacher took an interest in me and my plans I was so happy. I really admired him already, and when he seemed to care so much about my life I fell in love with him. Since I'm in Grade 12 I thought we are doing no harm – after all, I'm nearly an adult, and once I have left school we can be open about it. The future looked so great. But then I found him having sex with my best friend in his classroom after school and everything collapsed. How can I trust anyone again? And what have I done to myself?

Counsellor:

Mmm, it seems you were already feeling frustrated by what was happening in your life. You felt your studies were threatened by all your duties at home. Mr X. seemed to understand the difficulties of your situation and to value you so much that you felt this was a real love relationship and your future was opening up. Now that you have discovered his affair with your closest friend, nothing seems certain. You feel that you have lost trust in other people and you doubt yourself too.

Remember! The point of reflection is to:

Stay 'where the person is' at that moment.

This means you must not jump ahead of the client.

In Example 1, in order not to jump ahead of the client, would you say, "So if you break up with him permanently, do you think he will find you and still hit you?"

Stay with his/her feelings.

This means exploring the feelings the person is expressing right then, rather than suggesting other feelings.

In Example 2, in order to stay with the person's feelings, would you say, "But when you get all the home tasks done, it must also give you good feelings – satisfaction that you are doing what is right and helping to support your family"?

Move at his/her pace.

This means letting the client tell the story without you pushing her ahead to the next stage. There may be details and information which the client will not have a chance to express if you rush.

Allow him/her to work through his/her feelings.

This means not going on to discuss a second or third feeling until the first feeling has been spoken about in depth.

In Example 1, the client would probably want to work through the 'worry' about her family's safety and her work. Once that has been done, the counsellor can encourage her to talk about another feeling (maybe fear of rape, or anxiety about not having a boyfriend, or feelings of helplessness and hopelessness – whatever the client identifies). These feelings need to be discussed before the counselling session moves on to what could be done about the situation.

You need to practise reflective listening. To help develop these skills, you could (in the beginning) start most of your responses with: "You feel ... " or "You felt ... "

Example 3:

Client: I never want to have another boyfriend. My father left us and my

mother's life has been very hard all on her own. My sister's boyfriend has lots of other girlfriends too, so she is always unhappy. And my boyfriend was nothing but a rapist. It seems to me that boyfriends

and husbands are just trouble.

Counsellor: You feel afraid after being raped that any other boyfriend will let

you down and cause you unhappiness because men have also had

this effect on other members of your family.

Example 4:

Client: I hate speaking up in class. When I have to answer a question,

> those boys who shout remarks at girls in the school corridors all look at each other and then look me up and down and snort with

laughter as if there is something wrong with me.

Counsellor: You feel very anxious when you participate in class because boys

who harass girls try to embarrass and humiliate you.

Later, you may start your responses by using different phrases:

"From your point of view ... " "From where you stand ... "

"In your experience ... " "You're saying that ... "

"That was ... for you" "It would seem as though ... "

"It sounds like ... " "For you it's as if ... "

Example 5: (reflecting feelings and content at the same time)

Client: I really don't know what to do! I've just found out I'm pregnant! I'm

only 14. What am I going to do?

Counsellor: You feel helpless because you are going to have a baby at such a

young age.

(You feel [identify the feeling] because [identify the context or situation that is leading to the feeling])



HANDOUT 7. REFLECTIVE LISTENING PRACTICE

Work with a partner and choose the best response from the options given. Both the content and feelings of the person seeking help should be properly reflected in the chosen answer.

1. Grade 12 girl who has been abused by her boyfriend:

"I'm doing so badly in my studies. I feel as if I have messed up my life by getting into such a bad relationship and I will never get into any place to study because my marks are so bad. I may as well just drop out of school."

- a. You feel inadequate and hopeless because the difficulties of this relationship have distracted you from your studies and now your marks are poor. Your tertiary education prospects and future will be affected and you feel like giving up.
- b. You have lost your chance for university and feel bad about it.
- c. You're doing badly in your studies and because you got into a bad relationship you feel you're failing in life, will never get into any place of study and should drop out of school.

2. Boy (14) who has been raped:

"Getting my HIV-positive result was so bad! I just don't want to live anymore now – there is no point."

- a. Lots of people are HIV positive. You must not think about killing yourself!
- b. The news of your status is very difficult for you to accept. You are saying that you're thinking of suicide as a way out.
- c. Hearing your status has been difficult for you. It sounds like you are feeling frustrated.

3. Grade 11 boy:

"My girlfriend is good to me when we're alone, but she treats me badly when we go out with her friends. She also flirts with other boys all the time. I really do not want to leave her though, because I love her and know I won't easily get someone else."

- a. Your girlfriend is teasing you and you don't like that. Girls who are not loyal help to spread HIV so don't feel bad about dumping her. Of course you will find someone else you are good-looking and a nice person, or you wouldn't have put up with all her nonsense.
- b. Your girlfriend makes you angry, hurt and depressed. She has worn away your self-esteem by getting too fresh with other boys and now you think you'll be alone forever and never have sex again if you tell her the relationship has ended.
- c. It sounds like your girlfriend's behaviour confuses you, because she is inconsistent in her attitude and she is not loyal to you. But you feel reluctant to end this relationship because you still have feelings for her and you are not confident of finding another partner.

4. Mother (42):

"I can't believe that my brother has done this to my own daughter; I feel so angry, and sick with the thought of how it was for her! She doesn't even want to speak to me now. She thinks I let it happen because he was helping us with money and she says I sold her to him. But I didn't know - I was away working. I feel so bad that I did not pay proper attention. What can I do to convince her?"

- a. You are deeply distressed for your daughter because your brother has been abusing her. You are full of feelings of anger towards him and guilt because you were away and you feel you were not attentive to the situation; and you want to convince her that you did not turn a blind eye because of his financial input, as she thinks.
- b. You left your daughter with her uncle and now you are in big trouble. He has abused her and she is accusing you of selling her to him for groceries.
- c. You feel so bad as a mother; so guilty and depressed that you have not been there for your daughter. This is making you very sad and miserable.

NOTES		



HANDOUT 8. ASKING QUESTIONS SKILFULLY

Questions are an important part of the counselling relationship.

They can be used by the counsellor to get information about the other person's ideas concerning their problems and their past, and to clarify information and feelings. If you use questions well, you gain information; but if you do it badly, the questions get in the way of communication.

Effective use of questions in the counselling situation is a skill that you need to keep practising.

Some common errors in questioning

1. Asking too many questions

This will probably make the client feel they are being interrogated, and they may become defensive.

Control of information and direction now lies in the hands of the counsellor, instead of in the hands of the client: it's as if the counsellor is saying, "I'm the one who is qualified to decide what information is important here!" This attitude disempowers the client.

Use questions only when they have a purpose, i.e. to focus, expand and deepen the counselling process.

2. Closed and open-ended questions

Closed questions require a short, direct response, usually 'yes' or 'no'; sometimes they require another one-word answer. They prevent an in-depth response and block the sharing of feelings. For example:

- "Do you feel your boyfriend is treating you badly?" (Yes)
- "Do you have stomach pains?" (No)
- "Where do you live?" (Johannesburg)

There is place for some closed questions that help provide important background details. For example:

- "Do you have an adult caregiver at home?" or
- "How old are you?"

But if a client says, "My mother died last month and my uncle raped me on Tuesday night," the counsellor should not follow this comment with a closed question such as:

- "Do you feel very bad?" or
- "How many brothers and sisters do you have at home?"

Open-ended questions are the more useful in counselling – they encourage the client to explore his experiences, thoughts and feelings, without being channelled towards a particular response by the counsellor. Compare the amount of information you can get from the two categories:

CLOSED (LIMITED INFORMATION)	OPEN-ENDED (MORE INFORMATION)
Do you want to stop this abusive relationship?	Tell me what you feel about this relationship at the moment.
Are you going to taverns in the evenings?	What do you usually do in the evenings?
Could things change?	Describe how you think things could change.
Did you scream and run away?	What was your response to the situation?
Is there a problem at school?	Explain what happens at school.
Have you experienced symptoms of AIDS-related diseases?	Please tell me about how your health has been recently and how it is now.
Are you going to negotiate for safer sex with her?	How are you going to talk about having safer sex with her?

3. Leading questions

This type of question puts pressure on a person to answer in a certain way. For example:

"You know that you were dressed in a very provocative way, don't you?" or "Don't you think sex before marriage is very wrong?"

These types of questions often show what the counsellor is thinking, rather than what the client is thinking and feeling. Beware! The client's thoughts and feelings are more important than the counsellor's.

4. Questions that probe too deeply, too soon

Show sensitivity to people. Don't ask a probing question right at the start of a session before the client has relaxed, developed rapport with the counsellor or decided the counsellor can be trusted and confided in. Later in the session, questions which probe too deeply could cause anxiety in the person about issues he/she isn't ready to talk about. The client could feel that the counsellor is being intrusive and invasive.

5. Poorly-timed questions

Ensure you don't move in a different direction when the person has not yet finished talking about something else. Timing is something you will learn with practice.

6. 'Why?' questions

'Why?' questions usually do not help much in the counselling process. Often, the person does not know clearly why a particular emotion is felt or action was taken. To gain insight into behaviour it is often more useful to ask 'How?' questions.

Remember!

- These points are guidelines - not strict rules. Sometimes when questioning you might feel it is right to follow a gut feeling rather than sticking rigidly to the rules (e.g. this might be when the safety of a child is concerned).
- Tone of voice and nonverbal expression are also important. When asking a question, using a loud, angry, indignant or shocked tone of voice is unhelpful and even harmful. For the client's sake it is important to sound warm, concerned and calm. Control your body language so that you appear relaxed, 'open' and interested. If, for example, the counsellor's hands are on her hips or she is lolling in her chair, the client will not feel confidence in her.



HANDOUT 9. YOUR OWN HELP DIRECTORY



Make a Help Directory that includes all individual people, departments and organisations such as non-governmental organisations, community-based organisations and faith-based organisations that could be drawn into the support network. Add comments about their availability or how they might be used. Use the following form or make your own.

TYPE OF SUPPORT SERVICE	CONTACT PERSON	CONTACT DETAILS	COMMENTS
Clinic			
Hospital			
The South African Police Service			
District Office			
Social workers			
Community-based organisations			
Churches/faith- based organisations			
Help lines			
Non-governmental organisations			

HANDOUT 10. FACILITATING DISCLOSURE AND COMMUNICATING WITH CHILDREN

Many people who have been sexually abused feel strong emotions like embarrassment, shame, guilt, fear and anger about the abuse. For these and other reasons, disclosing sexual abuse can be a very difficult thing to do, especially for children: many never disclose at all. The way we facilitate and respond to disclosure can make it easier for children to talk about what happened to them, or it can make it more difficult. The following notes will give you some ideas about how you can help children and their families disclose sexual abuse.

1. Disclosure

Disclosure is often not spontaneous, that is, it does not happen automatically or on its own.

- It often begins when there is some other discovery (e.g. a urinary tract infection, or when a friend discloses the abuse).
- · Disclosure is often only partial.

Why don't children disclose abuse spontaneously?

- Shame
- Guilt
- The child is physically or psychologically threatened by the abuser.
- The child wants to protect others
- The child is trying to protect herself or himself
- Economic pressures (e.g. the child's family might depend on the abuser for money and the child might be afraid that his/her family won't get this money any more if he/she discloses the abuse).

Why don't children make a full disclosure?

- Children may only disclose what they think is relevant (important). They may think certain events are not significant.
- They may think the person to whom they are disclosing will respond negatively.
- · The child may fear punishment.
- They may only remember some aspects of the abuse at a time.
- The way the interviewer tries to get the child to remember the abuse might not work for the child.
- The child may think that the person to whom they are disclosing won't believe him/her.

Child abuse accommodation syndrome

Sometimes children retract (withdraw) their disclosure, saying that the abuse did not happen after all. This is called child abuse accommodation syndrome and there are many examples of it in the research on child abuse. It is likely to happen when:

- The person the child has disclosed to does not believed her.
- There has been a strong negative response to the child after the disclosure.
- The disclosure has seriously upset the child's life and this disruption is more painful than the abuse itself.
- · People have put pressure on the child to retract the disclosure.



2. Preparing to interview children after abuse

There are some factors that make it more or less likely that a child will disclose abuse to a particular interviewer. Think about these when planning an interview with a child:

- **Gender:** Some children cannot talk about sexual issues across genders, no matter how skilled the interviewer. That is, for some children, it is better for a boy to talk to a male interviewer or for a girl to talk to a female interviewer.
- Age: In some cultures, you may not discuss sexual issues with older people.
- Language: Children may not have the language to describe their experiences or feelings. They may also be uncomfortable using certain words.
- The physical setting: The child may not feel comfortable talking about the abuse in the particular place where it happened, e.g. at school.
- Perceived differences in status: Sometimes children find it difficult to talk to adults, especially those in roles of authority, such as educators.
- Other issues: Think of any other issues that may influence the interview.

For the above reasons, it is sometimes helpful if an older peer supports and helps younger children when they disclose abuse. However, this must be done with the guidance of an older person who is trained and, in the end, the adults in the school environment are responsible for supporting children when they disclose abuse.

Preparing your space

Is the space where you will interview the child child-friendly? Think about the following things:

- Seating: Are there cushions or floor coverings (mats or blankets) that the child can sit on?
- Allow for spillages and accidents: A mat is more practical than fixed carpeting, especially if the child is young and upset.
- Barriers: Are there any barriers between you and the child? For example, if you sit at a desk and the child sits on the other side of the desk, the desk becomes a physical barrier between the two of you.
- Pictures: What is on the walls? Do these things make the environment friendly and welcoming for the child?
- Play material: Are there a few things for the child to play with?
- Aids to talking: Are there things like crayons and paper that might help the child to express what happened?

Arrange for no distractions or interruptions. Switch off your cellphone, take the phone off the hook, inform the person working on the switchboard that you shouldn't be interrupted, educate your colleagues on the need for privacy and put a busy sign on your door and insist others respect it.

Preparing yourself

Find out the child's background:

- How old is the child?
- · How mature is the child?
- · What is the child's cultural background?
- · What is the child's main language?
- What state might the child be in?

Dress appropriately. Do not wear distracting clothing or jewellery. Don't 'power dress' which will be intimidating; instead, dress in a child-friendly way.

3. In the interview

Starting off

- · Observe the child carefully but don't make lots of eye contact which might frighten him/her.
- Ensure that you are at the same physical level as the child. It usually helps to sit on the floor with younger children.
- · Greet the child.
- Make sure you know/learn the child's name and what the child wants to be called.
- Make sure the child knows your name and what to call you. If possible, wear a name badge.
- Ensure the child is physically comfortable.
- Spend time establishing rapport (a friendly feeling) with the child.
- · Explain what you are going to do, and why.
- Explain vour role.
- · Ask the child's permission to go on.

During the contact

- Use simple language without talking down to the child.
- Show the child you are listening with your body. For example, face the child, lean slightly forward; nod regularly to show that you understand what he/she is saying.
- Adjust your voice and tone. For example, talk quietly, calmly and sympathetically.
- · Be aware of your facial expression. If you frown the child may think you don't believe him/her. If you look shocked the child may feel judged. If you look angry, the child might think you are angry with him/her. All of these things will have a negative impact on what he/she tells you.
- · Observe the child's responses and behaviour.
- · Let the child guide you.
- · The child may need something to drink.
- The child may need something to hold.
- Focus on strengths and not just on the abuse or negatives.
- Praise the child where appropriate but don't overdo this!
- Ask open-ended questions.
- · Try to avoid taking notes. If you have to, explain why and ask the child's permission.
- Don't jump to conclusions. Go slowly and don't rush the child.
- · Check your conclusions with the child.
- Accept that talking may be difficult for the child. Allow silences and pauses.
- Invite the child to ask you questions. Answer the questions honestly and simply.
- If possible, give the child some choices even if these are very simple.

Ending the contact

- Explain what will happen next.
- Check on the child's immediate safety needs.
- Don't make promises such as 'everything will be better now'. Sometimes things are worse for the child after disclosure.
- If you have to share information with others, explain to whom and why to the child.
- Explain your ongoing role. You are likely to need more than one session.



Remember!



Touch

Some traumatised children seek (look for) touch as a way to reconnect them to others. But some children are very anxious about and shrink away from touch. You must respect this because if you insist on touching the child, he/she will be further traumatised. However, some children may build up such a resistance to touch that it may put their future adult relationships at risk. This should be addressed through therapy and with the child's caregiver.

The role of the child's caregiver in the interview

- Ask the caregiver for information that will help you establish rapport with the child.
- You might need to include the child's caregiver while you are establishing rapport.
- Do not allow the caregiver to interrupt and offer explanations.
- Give the caregivers time to talk to you on their own. Explore their concerns and needs. Answer their questions honestly but also explain the child's need for emotional safety and confidentiality. Give them your contact details and details about the case in writing. Remember that by taking care of the caregiver, you are taking care of the child.

Things to remember

- Keep to commitments that you have agreed to.
- If you need to change appointments or other arrangements, communicate directly with the child and explain why the change has to be made.
- Remember that you are a model of appropriate adult behaviour to the child.
- Never share information outside the necessary circle of role-players.

4. Feelings children may find difficult to manage after abuse

Children may have a number of feelings that they find difficult to manage after abuse. You cannot wish these feelings away. They are a natural response to what the child has experienced.

These feelings may interfere with the child's ability to cope at school, at home and in other contexts. They, therefore, need help in expressing these feelings safely. However, they may not be able to label their feelings or discuss them openly. You will have to observe their behaviour to see and understand how they are feeling, and then you can help them to work out what practical strategies they could use to deal with these feelings.

Below we will look at some of the feelings children may find difficult to manage.

Anger

Children may be angry about why the abuse happened to them. They may find it difficult to express this anger without hurting themselves or others. Helping them acknowledge anger and express it safely may be important.

Depression

Children may feel as if their life is over. They may not be able to sleep or to eat. They may appear withdrawn and unmotivated.

Encourage the child to be physically active, but don't force it. Life/future planning may be helpful. Medication for depression should be used with great caution in children.

Guilt

Children may feel that they are responsible for what happened to them. Simple reassurances are not enough. Try to help the child express the reasons behind their feelings of guilt. Make sure that you discuss the issue of responsibility logically. You may have to do this repeatedly.

Poor self-image

Children may feel that their body is ugly because of what happened. They may also try to physically harm themselves. Encourage them to take care of themselves and give appropriate positive reinforcement when it is appropriate. Encourage the caregiver of the child to help with self-care.

My body is not mine

Children may completely or partially reject their body - 'it is not mine'. Encourage them to identify normal body issues (e.g. when they are hungry). Help them to learn ways of relaxing. Encourage them to take care of their bodies.

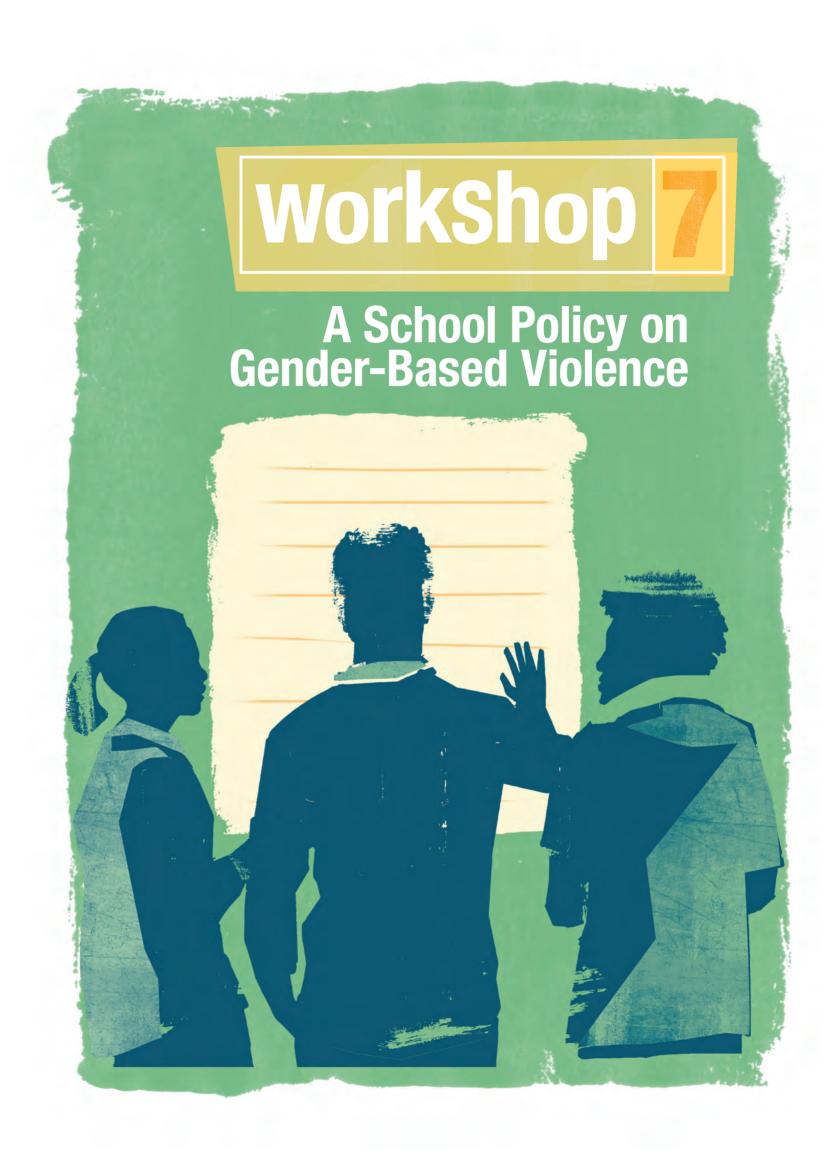
Anxiety

Children find it very difficult to acknowledge that they are anxious and they can't label anxiety properly until they are teenagers. They may describe it as always feeling scared that something will happen. Or they may have nightmares or difficulties concentrating at school. Encourage them to discuss their fears. Sometimes practical suggestions help (e.g. encouraging them to always walk with a friend or to share a sleeping space).

Early sexualisation

Sometimes a child feels that they only have value through their sexual behaviour and may become quite seductive. Encourage the child to express what they are feeling and discuss responsible sexual behaviour with them, without lecturing.





BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Confronting realities

A strong school policy on gender-based violence (GBV) can define the different types of GBV and set out clear procedures for dealing with them. It can also set out guidelines for positive discipline and gender relations at school.

However, in reality, schools struggle with policy development which is often seen as an unwelcome administrative chore rather than a driver of desirable changes. The challenge for this workshop is therefore to ensure that it supports schools in actually putting a policy document in place, or at least ensuring that features related to GBV are included in the school code of conduct.

This workshop also aims at helping the school achieve:

- · Regularised procedures for dealing with GBV;
- Improved support of learners who have experienced GBV;
- · Improved level of confidentiality in particular; and
- · Motivated school management to monitor and record incidents responsibly.

As the facilitator, you need to show participants that developing policy is a logical, motivating and not over-complicated task. Remind them of its advantages, which are outlined in the next section.

If you have to prioritise due to lack of time, do not underplay the value of local data-gathering of some kind as a basis for effective policy and action. Handout 2 provides information on the steps towards establishing GBV policy. A GBV survey would also be a very valuable exercise, although a more ambitious one. These kinds of tools enable schools to fine-tune policy to their own needs.

The value of a school policy on GBV

A policy is a strong public statement that the school considers all forms of GBV to be serious offences and that complaints will be taken seriously. This is important because it can make offending learners and educators aware that they will be held accountable for different levels of GBV. This can prevent less serious forms of sexual bullying from paving the way for extreme violence.

However, a policy collecting dust on the shelf of a principal's office will do little to combat these problems: its implementation process is crucial. Policies need to be posted and publicised, and members of the school community need to be educated about them.

There are many benefits to having a school policy on GBV. A policy increases personal safety at school by defining abusive behaviour and outlining consequences for offenders. The level of GBV in the school may decrease when individuals have clear guidelines for reporting abusive incidents. All members of the school community will benefit from a more positive, abuse-free learning environment.

A GBV policy at school level will help to reduce abusive behaviour in the wider society. By raising awareness about GBV, a policy will also help learners to become sensitive and responsible adults. The end result will be a society in which the quality of life is improved for all citizens.

The whole-school approach

Although school governing bodies should take the lead in developing such policies, all members of the school community should participate in the process. By undertaking a school safety audit and/or a GBV survey of learners, educators and other school staff will provide data to help tailor policy guidelines and procedures to the specific needs of their own schools. In addition, local data will provide examples of the kinds of abuse that are happening in a specific school, and thus show the whole school community that a policy is needed.

The roles and responsibilities for developing, implementing and monitoring the policy can be shared by members of the school community. Undertaking a survey, developing definitions of the different forms of GBV, reviewing provincial and national policies, writing the policy procedures, conducting an annual review and organising educational workshops are some of the specific tasks. Taking a wholeschool approach to dealing with GBV, sexual violation and rape will give educators, learners and parents a sense of ownership of their policy.

What should we include in the policy?

School-based policies on GBV should be in line with national and provincial education legislation. The relevant legislation has been identified in several workshops in this manual (in particular, see Workshop 1, pages 24-26). Before implementation, policies should be reviewed by the District Office of the Department of Basic Education, to ensure that they are in line with national or provincial policies.

The policy should be user-friendly and reflect the school culture. A good policy will address the following questions:

What is GBV? The policy should include definitions of sexual harassment, sexual violation and rape using clear examples. Refer to Workshop 1 on pages 19 and 20 and the Glossary on page 270 for help. When developing a school policy, the results of a school GBV survey will determine the kinds of behaviour that should be included in your particular list because while GBV is a pervasive problem, the forms of abusive behaviour may vary from school to school.

Definitions

Rape: Intentionally and unlawfully committing an act of sexual penetration with a complainant without his/her consent.

Sexual harassment: Any unwelcome sexual attention from a person who knows, or ought reasonably to know, that such attention is unwelcome; unwelcome explicit (direct) or implicit (indirect) behaviour, suggestions, messages or remarks of a sexual nature that have the effect of offending, intimidating or humiliating the complainant or a related person.

Sexual violation: Involves the sexualised touching of a person's intimate parts, or forcing a person to touch another person's intimate parts. Intimate parts include the mouth, vagina, penis, inner thighs, buttocks and breasts.

Who is covered by the policy? Anyone can be the target of sexual harassment, sexual violation or rape. The policy should cover all members of the school community and include a statement that abuse by learners, educators, administrators and school staff will not be tolerated.

Who can you talk to? The policy should list a contact person(s) who can explain the options available to someone who has been harassed or otherwise sexually abused. This person does not try to resolve the problem. Their role is to provide information and support. A guidance counsellor, nurse, designated educator or administrator is often the first-line person. Some education districts require that each school designate two people – one male, one female – who can act as GBV resource persons. They attend educational sessions on abuse (including homophobic bullying), sexual violation and rape, and are trained as policy advisers. They often take the lead in developing educational programmes relating to abuse for schools. Ideally, they would be full or co-opted members of the school-based support team.

What can you do? The policy should list a variety of options for dealing with GBV. These are set out in the *Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse* handbook available from district and provincial offices of the Department of Basic Education. Handout 5, in particular, will help participants to include different kinds of procedures for different offences, complainants and alleged offenders.

NOTES		

FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR

WorkShop 7

WORKSHOP LENGTH: 2 HOURS 45 MINUTES

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- Highlight the benefits of having a GBV policy in schools for the individual, the school community and for society.
- Develop policy and action on GBV in line with national principles.
- Identify issues at school that will need to be reflected in the policy.
- · Involve a wide spectrum of interested parties in policy development.
- Provide clarity on the role of each stakeholder in the policy.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- List the benefits of having a policy that supports the reduction of GBV in schools.
- Explain the process of policy development on GBV.
- Design tools that can be used to collect information, analyse that information and use it to design a school's policy on GBV.
- Identify and engage with relevant stakeholders to inform the policy development process.
- Identify roles and responsibilities of each stakeholder, including school leadership, management, educators, learners and community.
- Ensure that the policy offers sufficient protection for whistle-blowers and victims.

OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- **Topic 1.** Why is it important to have a GBV policy at schools? (30 minutes)
- Topic 2. Basing policy on local data: the policy-making process (30 minutes)
- Topic 3. Identifying internal and external stakeholders (20 minutes)
- Topic 4. Implementing and monitoring the policy: roles and responsibilities (30 minutes)
- Topic 5. Add value to your policy (40 minutes)

MATERIALS

- · Chalkboard and chalk
- Coloured markers
- Flipchart
- Masking tape or pins
- · Overhead projector (optional)

WORKSHOP 7 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 2 STEPS TOWARDS ESTABLISHING GBV POLICY

HANDOUT 3 STAKEHOLDER IDENTIFICATION TOOL

HANDOUT 4 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES IN POLICY-MAKING

HANDOUT 5 **ADD VALUE TO POLICY-MAKING**





GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 7

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



Facilitators should read the *Background information* for Workshops 1 and 2 before conducting this workshop. They contain important advice for every workshop in this manual.

However, the specific concern for Workshop 7 is to help participants focus on action, i.e. help participants engage with the policy-making procedure. Therefore, emphasise that this is not a bureaucratic exercise – the point is action. Maintain awareness that participants' own real and pressing school issues are the key reasons for putting a policy together.

LENGTH:

INTRODUCTION

Provide a broad overview of the workshop and, if necessary, give participants the opportunity to get to know you and the other participants.

TOPIC 1. WHY IS IT IMPORTANT TO HAVE A GBV POLICY AT SCHOOLS?

MATERIALS

- · Chalk/chalkboard or flipchart/marker pens
- · Large sheet of paper
- · Masking tape
- Prestik®
- · Handout 1. Benefits of having a GBV policy in schools

Task. Identifying benefits at all levels

Brainstorm followed by discussion. Ahead of the activity, divide the flipchart/board into three sections and write headings for each section: *Individual*, *School community* and *Society*. Use these questions to help participants brainstorm:

- · Why it is important to have a GBV policy in schools?
- What are the benefits to individuals, the school community and society in general?

Also use the examples on Handout 1 to encourage the brainstorming exercise. List participants' ideas on the flipchart/board under appropriate headings. Spend about 20 minutes on brainstorming and discussing participants' suggestions. Ask a volunteer to copy ideas onto a large sheet of paper which can be stuck on the wall so that it can be referred to by the group throughout the workshop.

At the end of the task, distribute Handout 1 to participants. Summarise and comment on this information to wrap up.





TOPIC 2. BASING POLICY ON LOCAL DATA: THE POLICY-MAKING PROCESS

MATERIALS

Handout 2. Steps towards establishing GBV policy

Task. Learning steps to be taken for policy-making

Introduction. Explain to participants they will now look at the issues that drive policy, i.e. the situation in their own school. The tool they are about to use will help to identify some needs that their policy and action goals must respond to.

Small group discussion. Distribute Handout 2. Give groups about 10 minutes to look more closely at the handout, although it would be best used in the actual school situation as an auditing exercise. These two questions will help participants examine and evaluate the indicators used in the tool:

- 1. How well do these indicators apply to your own school(s)?
- 2. What indicators might you/would you need to add?

Report back. Spend about five minutes on feedback. Discuss groupings for auditing the school, and ask participants to identify or suggest different possible groupings. For example:

- One-on-one group. Educators might prefer to identify partners given the sensitivity of educator-learner relationships and educator-educator relationships. Pairs can then report the results back to the group.
- **Mixed-stakeholder group.** Educators, school governing body members, parents and even learners could team up to gather information. This approach would involve all members of the school community.
- Single-stakeholder group. Teams of people who have the same roles could complete tools together. For example, a group of educators could work on their own school's recreation area, and then the groups can compare results.

Before wrapping up the activity, ask participants: How could you get more complete information on the levels of GBV at your school?

Answer

For more complete information on the levels of GBV at their schools, a survey of the experiences of learners and educators in this regard would need to be taken. Such a survey would be a challenging but motivating exercise. It could expose needs effectively, and put issues firmly on the table.

workshop

TOPIC 3. IDENTIFYING INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL STAKEHOLDERS

MATERIALS

- · Chalkboard
- Large sheets of paper
- Marker pens
- · Masking tape
- · Handout 3. Stakeholder identification tool

Task. Completing a grid to identify stakeholders

Introduction. Ask participants the following questions:

- 1. Why it is important to get all relevant stakeholders involved in school GBV policy-making?
- 2. Who should get involved in the policy-making process?

Suggested responses

- The whole school community is affected by the behaviours and relationships at school
 and at home that create a climate of GBV and abuse. Therefore, everyone needs to be
 represented in some way in policy development and/or get involved in responsive or
 preventive action according to their capacity and the specific needs of their school and
 its learners.
- 2. External stakeholders. It may not be within the school's capacity to provide the necessary support. Therefore, school policy must prescribe and describe a network of support involving all the relevant sectors locally. These include district Department of Basic Education structures, the South African Police Service, social workers of the Department of Social Development and local Department of Health institutions and officers, as well as community-based organisations, community leaders and non-government organisations with relevant services, the National Prosecuting Authority, etc. When reporting abuse such as severe harassment and rape, time frames and prompt action using trusted contacts are all-important for protecting evidence, preventing infection and avoiding intimidation and secondary abuse by officials who lack the appropriate skills and attitudes. School policy must provide for local conditions and needs.

Small group discussion. Distribute Handout 3. Ask participants to complete the table, identifying both internal and external stakeholders. The table requires participants to collect information about the various stakeholders so that the extent and the quality of the contribution they can make is on record and the school can assemble the strongest network possible by offsetting weaknesses.

Report back. Participants should report back on the stakeholders they have identified and give reasons for identifying them. In your comments to facilitators, emphasise the importance of participation and keeping stakeholders on board.







LENGTH:



TOPIC 4. IMPLEMENTING AND MONITORING THE POLICY: ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

MATERIALS

• Handout 4. Roles and responsibilities in policy-making

Task: Discussing how to implement and monitor the policy

Say to participants. Before you go any further in this exercise, decide on who will undertake the various roles and responsibilities for implementing and monitoring the GBV policy at school.

Small group discussion. Refer appropriate groupings of participants to Handout 4. Allow enough time for discussion of the issues involved before feedback from the whole group. Any issues can be resolved later but should be aired now.

NOTE:



The importance of this activity lies in involving the whole school community as far as possible, even with an early draft summary of the policy and even if the school does not attempt a GBV survey. Many schools will never carry out a survey, but if they can manage to involve enough interested parties (e.g. representative council of learners and/or peer support groups) they can get valuable input on the current situation and needs with regard to GBV. This input will help them to put better procedures and actions in place.

TOPIC 5. ADD VALUE TO YOUR POLICY

MATERIALS

- · Coloured markers
- Flipchart
- · Handout 5. Add value to policy-making

Task: Discussing how to add value to your policy

Say to participants. By now you have a framework of definitions, roles and responsibilities and procedures. You have also identified some issues at your school to work with for your policy. However, certain other important policy ingredients might need more thought in order to reflect them clearly and offer real guidance when you write up the policy. Let's look at three such aspects.

In groups. Refer groups to Handout 5. Allocate each topic (A, B and C) to different groups. Ask them to 'teach back' this topic to another group and suggest responses to the questions at the end of their particular topic (10–15 minutes).

Feedback. Get feedback on each topic and encourage general discussion of the questions.

Suggested responses

A There are many possible actions the school-based support team could engage with, e.g. organising with peer groups/clubs to ensure girls' safety on the way to/from school; organising with community leaders to 'clean up' dangerous places in the area; organising basic training in 'first-stop' counselling for educators and members of the representative council of learners; running a campaign to make the school toilets safe; concerted action on educator-learner sex, etc.

B Breaches of confidentiality frequently collapse the complainant's case and are often engineered to do so. The complainant, already traumatised by the abuse, is likely to withdraw their case if it comes under the spotlight. Breaches also happen because people like to be privy to shocking information and gossip about it. The best solution might be for the principal alone to have access to the confidential file, since he/she is ultimately accountable for the conduct of all such cases.

C Data from monitoring are very important, primarily because they give an idea of the extent and nature of the problem, which is essential if the school is going to respond adequately in terms of policy and action. It is worrying that there are so few statistics and reported cases when the problem is of epidemic proportions. Collection of data also indicates that the school/principal takes the issue seriously. Current local data obviously enable the school to gear its policy much closer to learners' needs.





SUGGESTED FOLLOW-UP ACTIVITIES

- 1. Start the process of developing a GBV policy at school. Report back on it and the other activities (see the following suggestions) during mentoring sessions.
- 2. Conduct GBV surveys among learners and staff. (Refer to the *National School Safety Framework*, pages 64–68 and pages 73–78.)
- 3. Develop a GBV poster in conjunction with interested learners and educators to be printed and displayed at strategic points in the school.
- 4. Organise a GBV action group, including learners and educators, to continue promoting equity and developing strategies to address GBV in the school.
- 5. Organise interested learners to write and perform songs/plays/poetry that address the issues of GBV.

NOTES		

WorkShop 7 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 1. BENEFITS OF HAVING A GBV POLICY IN SCHOOLS

Benefits for the individual

- · Increased personal safety and security at school.
- · Increased awareness of GBV and its detrimental effects.
- · Increased personal power.
- Clear, articulated individual rights to redress in instances of GBV experienced in schools.
- Articulated grievance procedures and protocols in schools.
- Increased equity and access to resources in schools (e.g. school space, equipment, educator time and knowledge).
- · A more positive experience of schooling.
- · A decreased threat of violence.
- A better, more effective learning and working environment.

Benefits for the school community

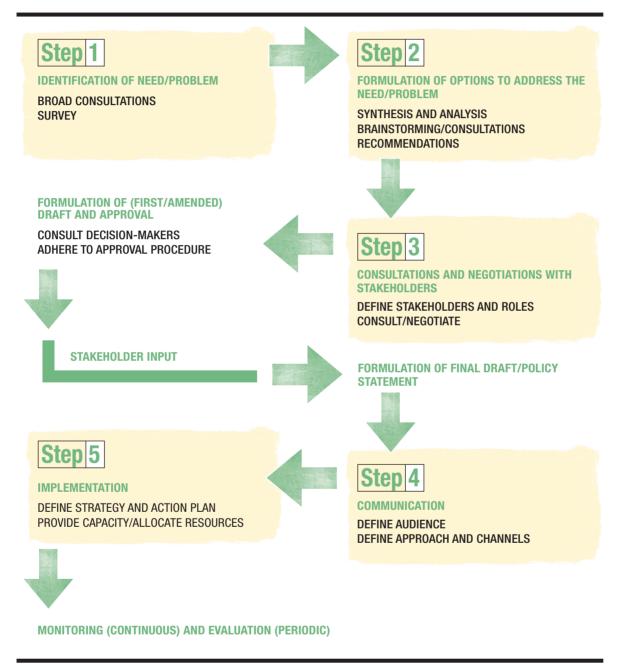
- A uniform, consistent approach to dealing with sexual harassment and other forms of GBV.
- A framework for effective, standardised intervention strategies and grievance procedures.
- Decreased sexual harassment and other forms of GBV towards learners, educators and other school staff.
- Decreased school liability for incidents of GBV (sexual harassment, rape or sexual violation).
- · Increased education about GBV.
- More awareness of GBV in the broader community through community education.
- · A more equal learning environment, enhancing learners' life chances.
- A more equitable and efficient workplace environment.
- A 'safe place' for individuals and their families in the community.

Benefits for society

- A short- and long-term decrease in GBV in the broader community.
- Promotion of anti-discriminatory practices that benefit everyone.
- A more productive and successful society on all levels.
- Enhanced equity in personal relationships between men and women, adults and children.
- Greater awareness and equity around gender and sexuality differences.

HANDOUT 2. STEPS TOWARDS ESTABLISHING GBV POLICY





Overview

This figure is an overview of policy development guidelines. It illustrates the series of steps that need to be taken to ensure effective policy formulation.

7 HANDOUTS

Step 1. Identification of need or problem

In undertaking the policy development process, the first step is to thoroughly identify needs or problems. The needs/problems have to be defined or explained clearly, providing the background to the need or problem and determining the range of possible causes. Where there is no policy in place, explain what the need is that may call for the formulation of a policy.

Approach

The approach used in the needs analysis may vary. Individual or group discussions could be held with the relevant stakeholders and decision-makers, or a written survey could be completed. Discussions need to be fairly broad and the information obtained must be verified.

Step 2. Formulation of options to address the need/ problem

The next step in the process starts to focus on seeking solutions. First, the information obtained in the previous phase has to be synthesised and analysed. Then, alternative options to address the problem/need must be comprehensively formulated (including the formulation of a policy). The implications and possible consequences and outcomes of each alternative should then be detailed, along with all the requirements that must be met for each option. A recommendation should then be drafted regarding the most workable option that will effectively address the need/problem in the long term.

Approach

Consultations with relevant stakeholders should be as broad as may be necessary and brainstorming sessions should be held to inform the formulation of alternative options and the ultimate recommendation.

Step 3. Consultations and negotiations with stakeholders, formulation of policy and approval of final draft

Obtain an understanding of the roles of various stakeholders with regard to the suggested policy and identify those who will participate in the formulation (or review process). Define what their involvement will be and ensure that roles are clearly understood. Consult with all identified stakeholders and negotiate the proposed policy or amendments. Consolidate the input received and formulate a draft (or amended) policy. Engage in further consultations and

negotiations, working towards a final draft and policy statement that will ultimately be approved.

Approach

Adhere to the consultation and communication procedures and channels of the school. Define procedures to be followed and decision-makers to be consulted to obtain approval of the policy (or amendments). Observe protocol. As far as the policy document is concerned, there is no prescribed format and it will vary from one policy document to another.

Step 4. Communication of policy

Once the policy is approved, it is important to ensure that it is communicated in a way that will be easy to understand. It must be clearly defined to whom the policy should be communicated and how, i.e. what the appropriate channels are that must be used to announce and explain the new (or amended) policy. Depending on the policy, communication may be limited to key stakeholders.

Approach

Meetings, presentations and workshops should be arranged and any further areas of clarification should be fully addressed.

Step 5. Implementation of policy

For implementation to be effective there needs to be a strategy in place with specific action plans. There should be no ambiguity about who is involved and in what way. Also, expectations should be clearly outlined, i.e. what should be done to carry out the policy and to facilitate adherence to it. The aids or resources that are needed to implement the policy effectively need to be clearly detailed.

Monitoring and evaluation

To ensure that the monitoring and evaluation of the policy and its implementation are effective, the objectives against which the success of the policy is to be measured need to be well understood by all stakeholders. The tools that are to be used for the measurement should be practical and user-friendly and understood by all concerned. Reporting and accountability lines and systems need to be clear and there must be agreement as to what corrective measures will be taken should the implementation of the policy not prove to be successful.

Adapted from *Policy Review Training Workshop Report* (Sediba Consulting 2002)

HANDOUT 3. STAKEHOLDER IDENTIFICATION TOOL



Complete this table with information about internal and external stakeholders.

Stakeholder name	
Importance of stakeholder? (Low, medium or high) Reasons?	
Current level of support they provide? (Low, medium or high)	
What do you want from the stakeholder?	
What is important to the stakeholder? At what stage/s will you involve them?	
How could the stakeholder block your efforts?	
How could you deal with this?	
Roles and responsibilities	



HANDOUT 4. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES IN POLICY-MAKING

Who could undertake the following roles and responsibilities for implementing and monitoring a GBV policy in your school?

Undertake a school safety audit and/or GBV survey:

- · Identifying surveys for learners, educators and other school staff
- · Implementing the survey
- · Collating the data and writing a report
- Disseminating the information from the report.

Develop the policy and procedures:

- · Recruiting people who should be involved
- Producing a definition of GBV
- · Deciding what information about GBV is to be included
- · Writing the policy.

Implement the policy:

- · Publicising the policy
- · Educating learners about the policy
- · Educating educators about the policy
- · Educating other staff about the policy
- Educating the community about the policy
- Identifying individuals or groups who will be responsible for steps of the procedures.

Monitor the policy:

- · Ensuring that the policy is implemented
- · Evaluating its effectiveness
- · Instigating changes where necessary
- Considering alternatives to practices where policy improvement is needed
- · Conducting an annual policy review.

HANDOUT 5. ADD VALUE TO POLICY-MAKING

A The school-based support team: support for learners or educators who have experienced GBV.

The school should have a well-established school-based support team which includes representatives from the school management team, educators, representative council of learners and school governing body. The school-based support team should also, if possible, include representatives from communitybased organisations, local community leaders and the South African Police Service, as well as health workers and a social worker.

The school-based support team is in place to ensure that cases of GBV are reported, dealt with and referred accordingly, within reasonable time frames. While learners are often involved in reporting cases of GBV and also in providing informal support structures for the victim, no learner should be involved in managing the investigation of a GBV case or in disciplinary action in such a case.

The primary responsibility for investigating cases of GBV and managing disciplinary proceedings rests with the school management team:

- 1. Investigations by the school management team, Department of Education and South African Council for Educators should run concurrently with police investigations. The school should not await a court ruling before dealing with cases under its jurisdiction.
- 2. The school-based support team should provide abused learners/educators with counselling or refer them to professional counsellors. They can also help to organise medical support and the involvement of social welfare, if necessary.

Confidentiality and discretion: dealing with disclosure by learners who have experienced GBV

In these situations, confidentiality cannot be total, because other professionals will be brought in if you have to report a criminal case to the police, the South African Council for Educators or the Department of Basic Education. However, educators must use great discretion and keep complete confidentiality at school. In particular, any educator to whom a learner discloses abuse must take the greatest care not to break confidentiality and not to investigate the case on his/her own initiative. The imperatives are as follows:

- Do not interrogate the complainant in order to obtain information or to 'investigate' the case.
- Do not insist on seeing the physical evidence of abuse.
- · Do not examine the complainant for signs of GBV by removing clothes and/or touching or examining the private parts.
- Do not take a statement from the complainant, as the investigating officer of the South African Police Service will do this.
- **Do not** confront the parents or the caregivers if they are the suspected or alleged perpetrators.

The level of trust the learner has in the relevant educator will largely determine whether he/she will be prepared to lodge a complaint or disclose information. Here are some positive guidelines that could also be included in a policy document:





Handout 5A sets out the most basic functions of the school-based support team and school management team with regard to GBV. Suggest some action related to GBV that the school-based support team could get involved in at your school, working with learners, educators, parents/caregivers, community organisations and/or multi-sectoral players.



7 HANDOUTS



If confidentiality is breached, what are the effects likely to be? Why does this happen so often? How can your policy ensure that such cases are handled in the best interests of the learner-complainant?



Why is this data-gathering so important? How can it help your policy and action work at school?

- Disclosure can be a very traumatic experience. Prevent further emotional harm to the complainant. The details of the abuse should be related to as few people as possible.
- · Display empathy, warmth and acceptance.
- Try to ensure the safety of the complainant against further abuse.
- Clarify confidentiality, but explain that other professional persons will have to be informed.
- Identify the other role-players who are to be involved, as well as their roles and functions.
- Explain the potential consequences of the disclosure, i.e. that as an educator you are legally bound to report the case (e.g. to the South African Police Service).
- · Cases of child GBV must be reported as soon as possible.
- The incident should *never* be discussed with the alleged offender.
- Keep a file on the case, but do not put the child's name on the file. Number the
 file only and, in addition, keep it securely locked away. Keep a list with names
 and numbers in another secure place. If the alleged offender is an employee
 of the school, the documents related to them should also be kept in the
 confidential file.

C The principal's reporting and monitoring role

School principals should review the reported cases of girls and boys who have experienced GBV in public schools on a quarterly basis and officially report to the district or regional office.

Districts and regional offices should forward the information concerned to the provincial offices who will in turn forward the information to the national office. This information is vital for:

- Tracking the effectiveness of departmental guidelines.
- · Ensuring that management of cases improves steadily.
- Ensuring that more incidents are reported.

Of the abused learners, the principal/school management team should determine:

- 1. The number of girls and boys who are still interacting with or have to face their alleged perpetrators daily.
- 2. The number that have dropped out of school because of pressure, including pressure from the alleged perpetrators or others in the school.

Principals should also determine:

- 1. The number of reported cases.
- 2. The number of reported cases withdrawn by the complainant.
- 3. The rate of successful convictions and/or disciplinary actions taken against perpetrators.

Reports should also identify what interventions, including referrals, if any, can be made by the school to assist those who have been abused, if counselling services do not exist.

NOTES	





A Whole-School Approach to Gender-Based Violence



BACKGROUND INFORMATION

This workshop will help participants and their schools respond to violence, especially genderbased violence (GBV), within the National School Safety Framework. The workshop draws on the approach of the Framework.

While all the workshops in this manual can be used with a variety of school stakeholders, this particular workshop is especially designed for wider use.

Members of school governing bodies and caregiver and community stakeholders may not have attended other workshops or explored GBV to the extent that school participants may have done (or even experienced first-hand). You will need to ensure that all participants are very familiar with key issues of GBV: the *Background information* sections for Workshops 1 and 7 are therefore particularly useful for this workshop.

INTRODUCTION

Much of the following information on the different types of school-based violence is drawn from *Doorways III: Teacher Training Manual on School-Related Gender-Based Violence Prevention and Response Manual* (USAID 2009).

According to USAID, global estimates indicate that almost half of all female learners and a significant number of male learners experience some form of sexual violence in the educational context. This form of violence, also known as school-related GBV, results in sexual, physical or psychological harm to girls and boys. It includes any form of violence or abuse that is based on gendered stereotypes or that targets learners on the basis of their sex. It also includes, but is not limited to: rape, unwanted sexual touching, unwanted sexual comments, corporal punishment, bullying and verbal harassment.

The *National School Violence Study* conducted in South Africa in 2008 revealed that 15 per cent of young people have experienced violence at school (Burton 2008). In 2012, a follow-up study found that 20.2 per cent of secondary school learners have been victims of threats of violence, assault, sexual assault, rape and robbery (Burton and Leoschut 2013). Classrooms were identified as the most common sites for violence in both these studies. It was also reported that much of the violence occurring in schools is perpetrated by other learners at the school. Educators are often unaware of alternatives to corporal punishment and increasingly feel that they have lost control of classes.

Unequal power relations between adults and children and males and females contributes to gender violence. Violence can take place in the school, on the school grounds, going to and from school or in school dormitories. It may be perpetrated by educators, learners or community members. Both girls and boys can be victims as well as perpetrators. It is believed that experience of and exposure to violence in any environment at a young age increases the risk of later victimisation as well as perpetration of violence and other anti-social behaviours. School-related GBV also has a long-lasting negative impact on learners' academic performance as well as their physical health and mental well-being.

There are three types of school-related GBV: sexual, physical and psychological. These overlap, and at times distinctions between them are imperceptible, e.g. bullying may be either verbal or physical. Girls and boys who step out of their traditional gender roles can experience all three forms of violence. Girls can be humiliated by educators in relation to their physical appearance (sexual violence or harassment) as well as their intellectual ability (psychological abuse).

Sexual violence

Girls and boys experience sexual violence or abuse by an adult or another child through any form of forced or unwanted sexual activity where there is no consent; consent is not possible where power or intimidation is used to coerce a sexual act. Sexual violence and abuse include direct physical contact such as unwanted touching or any kind or rape, which is also known as 'defilement' for young people under the legal age of consent. Regardless of the legal age of consent, sexual activity between an educator and learner is considered to be abuse because of the difference in age and power between them. Activities such as making a child watch sexual acts or pornography, using a child to make pornography or making a child look at an adult's genitals is also abuse.

Sexual violence can be verbal. For example, sexually explicit language aimed at children or any repetitive, unwanted and uninvited sexual attention through teasing or taunting about dress or personal appearance is also sexual violence. Sexual violence or abuse can have devastating, long-lasting effects on learners. Such effects can include increased risk of social, emotional and psychological damage, increased risk of substance abuse, health and social problems such as unwanted pregnancy, sexually transmitted infections including HIV and AIDS, depression, memory disturbances and aggressive behaviour. Sexual violence can also negatively affect educational success.

Physical violence

Girls and boys experience physical violence or abuse by an adult or another child through corporal punishment, forced labour, fighting and bullying.

Corporal punishment is any punishment in which physical force is used to cause pain or discomfort, however minimal. This type of violence involves hitting children with the hand or an implement (e.g. whip, stick, belt, shoe or wooden spoon). It can also involve kicking, shaking or throwing children, scratching, pinching, biting, pulling hair or boxing ears, forcing children to stay in uncomfortable positions, burning, scalding or forced ingestion (e.g. washing out children's mouths with soap or forcing them to swallow hot spices). In general, educators apply corporal punishment differently to girls than they do to boys. In most cases, boys experience more frequent and severe physical punishment than girls as a way to 'make them men'.

Corporal punishment has negative physical and psychological effects on learners which include pain, injury, humiliation, guilt, helplessness, anxiety and low selfesteem. Educators can physically abuse children through forced labour during and outside school hours. Educators may force learners either to fetch water or work in their fields, with children running the risk of physical injury from heavy manual labour and educational failure from missing class time.

Physical violence and abuse among learners takes the form of bullying, beating and fighting. Physical violence can have devastating, long-lasting effects on learners, including increased risk of social, emotional and psychological damage, increased risk of substance abuse, physical, mental health and social problems, memory disturbances and aggressive behaviour. It can also negatively affect educational success.



8 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Psychological violence

Girls and boys experience psychological violence and abuse from both peers and educators through verbal harassment, bullying, teasing or degrading and cruel punishment.

Educators may use non-physical punishment that belittles, humiliates, denigrates, threatens, scares or ridicules children. Constant unjustified criticism, refusal to praise, unclear boundaries and unpredictable behaviour eventually take their toll on young people.

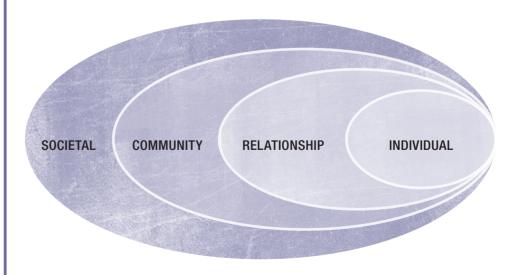
Psychological violence and abuse among learners takes the form of verbal taunting of boys and girls whose behaviour does not fit into society's image of what is 'masculine' or 'feminine' as a way to make them conform. Bullying can range from teasing to physical violence perpetrated by both learners and educators.

Other forms of bullying include threats, name-calling, sarcasm, spreading rumours and exclusion from a group, humiliation and abusive remarks. In addition, bullying is a pattern of behaviour rather than an isolated incident. Psychological abuse can have devastating, long-lasting effects on learners, including increased risk of social, emotional and psychological damage and mental health and social problems such as anxiety and depression. It can also negatively affect educational success.

UNDERSTANDING THE LEVELS OF RESPONSE REQUIRED

WHO ecological model – four-level framework

The World Health Organization ecological model on violence prevention provides a four-level framework within which violence and its complex relationships can be understood and addressed. It provides a method for understanding some of the key factors that contribute to the risk of violence against women and girls. The model is organised in terms of four levels of risk: individual, relationship, community and society. It highlights the importance of understanding the complex interplay of biological, psychological, social, cultural, economic and political factors that increase the likelihood of women and girls experiencing violence (and men's likelihood for perpetrating violence).



WHO ecological model on violence prevention

The table provides a breakdown of the risk factors associated with each level of the WHO ecological model. These risks assist understanding of the drivers of violence at each level and the kinds of interventions required to respond to them.

SOCIETAL	COMMUNITY	RELATIONSHIP	INDIVIDUAL
Broad factors that reduce inhibitions against violence	Neighbourhood, schools and workplaces	With family, intimate partners and friends	Personal factors that influence individual behaviour
Poverty	High unemployment	Family disfunction	Gender, age and education
Economic, social and gender inequalities	High population density	Intergenerational violence	A family history of violence
Poor social security	Social isolation of females and family	Poor parenting practices	Witnessing GBV
Masculinity linked to aggression and	Lack of information	Parental conflict involving violence	Victim of child abuse or neglect
dominance Weak legal and criminal justice system	Inadequate victim care Schools and workplaces not addressing GBV	Association with friends who engage in violent or delinquent	Lack of sufficient livelihood and personal income
Perpetrators not prosecuted No legal rights for	Weak community sanctions against GBV	behaviour Low socioeconomic status	Unemployment Mental health and behavioural problems
victims Social and cultural norms support violence	Poor safety in public spaces Challenging traditional gender	Socioeconomic stress Friction over women's	Alcohol and substance abuse Prostitution
Small firearms	roles	empowerment Family honour more	Refugee/internally displaced
Conflict or post conflict Internal displacement and	Blaming the victim Violating of victim confidentiality	important than female health and safety	Disabilities Small firearms ownership
refugee camps			

Source: World Bank 2009

NATIONAL SCHOOL SAFETY FRAMEWORK - RISK AND PROTECTION **FACTORS**

The overall aim of the National School Safety Framework is to create a safe, violence- and threat-free, supportive learning environment for learners, educators, principals, school governing bodies and administrations.

Its broad objectives are to:

- · Assist the school in understanding and identifying all security issues and threats through provision of standard operational guidelines for provinces to implement detailed plans at provincial and local level.
- · Guide schools to effectively respond to identified security issues and threats by putting in place security and access control measures.

8 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

- Create reporting systems and manage reported incidents appropriately.
- Help the school to monitor their progress over time.

The *National School Safety Framework* also identifies a range of risk and protective factors to be considered at different levels. These are given in the table.

Risk and protective factors for violence

SETTING	RISK FACTORS	PROTECTIVE FACTORS
Individual level	Biological vulnerability	Spirituality/religion
	Low self-esteem	Social skills
	Participation in behaviours that endanger health	Above-average intelligence Greater self-efficacy
	Intellectual deterioration	Perceived importance of parent
	Early or delayed puberty	Positive self-esteem
	Difficult temperament	T GOILLYG GOILL GOLGGIII
	Impulsiveness	
	Affective disorders	
	Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)	
	Aggressive or defiant behaviour in early childhood	
	Reaction to stress	
	Deficiencies in processing social	
	information	
	Lack of skills to resolve social problems	
Relationship level (family)	Little instruction on parenting	Relationship with family
	Mental illnesses in the family	Presence of parents
	Family's participation in crimes	Parents' values: with regard to
	Parents' consumption of illegal substances	schooling Parents' values: with regard to
	Maternal stress	risky behaviour
	Large family	Having a father and mother
	Overcrowding	Fewer siblings/space for children
	Poverty	Family unity
	Access to weapons	Parents' democratic teaching
	Authoritarian or permissive style of parents	style (based on dialogue)
	Family violence	

SETTING	RISK FACTORS	PROTECTIVE FACTORS
Community level (school)	Retention in the same grade Size of school Absenteeism Suspensions	Close relationship with school Better academic performance Period spent in the same school School policies
Community level (friends)	Being the subject of prejudice by friends Perception of threats Social isolation Participation in cultures that stray from the norm	Fair treatment by friends Having friends who do not have risks Friends with pro-social standards
Social level	Arrests by age and type Fertility rates in community, by ages Unemployment rate by neighbourhood Single-parent households/with female head of household Age at time of emigration Exposure to violent media Exposure to youth-oriented advertising Access to tobacco, alcohol, drugs or weapons Watching television/videos	Access to healthcare services Educational achievements by age School enrolment for adolescents between the ages of 16 and 19 Access to health care services Use of health care services Adult employment rates Positive support systems Religious institution Access to good role models Pro-social media

Source: Blum (2006) in the National School Safety Framework, page 11.

HOW VIOLENCE IMPACTS ON LEARNERS AND EDUCATORS

Extensive research (National School Violence Survey 2008) has highlighted a range of consequences of learner victimisation which are associated with physical, emotional and academic aspects of learners' lives. These consequences have a negative effect on learners' motivation and desire to excel academically at school – factors that increase young people's resilience to becoming involved in criminal and delinquent behaviour. Violence also significantly affects educators, and chronic exposure to school violence has even led to the identification of 'battered educator syndrome'.

Impact of violence on learners and educators

LEARNERS	EDUCATORS
Occurrence of physical pain and injuries	Stress reactions increased
Feelings of fear and anxiety	Anxiety, headaches
Depressive symptoms	Depressive symptoms
Feelings of low self-esteem	Reliance on unhealthy coping mechanisms
Social isolation from peers	Diminished social functioning
Trouble concentrating at school	Less supportive interpersonal relationships
High absentee and drop-out rates	Presence of eating disorders
Poor academic performance	Decrease in academic achievement

WHY SAFE SCHOOLS ARE IMPORTANT FOR SAFE COMMUNITIES

Schools are very important stakeholders in achieving safe communities for both children and adults.

Schools should be safe places that promote learning at all levels

Schools are fundamental to developing learners academically and socially so they can form healthy and productive relationships. They thus serve as excellent settings to implement safety and violence prevention programmes that can have positive long-term effects on learners.

Violence prevention efforts targeting schools are an integral part of the community's overall safety plan

As the individual is part of the broader society, the social values and attitudes of the community influence the behaviour of learners. Schools are in an ideal position to address many attitudes and behaviours that support and perpetuate violence.

Schools provide an efficient, timely and practical way to reduce crime and violence

Schools can reach not only learners, but also other segments of the population, such as family members, community members and school support staff. Schools provide several services to learners, many of which have elements in common with programmes offered in the community. Schools can therefore be effective as

tools leading to the adoption of a more integrated approach to crime and violence prevention.

Schools allow learners to be targeted at an early age

Intervening at an early age is critical as this is when attitudes, values and behaviours develop rapidly. Early childhood development strives to create positive and healthy attitudes and decrease the reinforcement of unhealthy habits. Early aggression and behavioural problems tend to worsen over time and could develop into serious antisocial behaviours. It is thus essential to intervene early because it will be more effective and it will also reduce costs as trying to change deep-seated patterns of maladaptive behaviours in older children is more challenging.

CHALLENGES TO ACHIEVING SAFETY AT SCHOOLS

A number of challenges exist to creating a safe environment within schools. Some of these are specific to the school and classroom. Others reflect challenges relating to violence prevention more generally, but are still important to address within the school.

Reporting and under-reporting

Children are arguably less likely to report some forms of violence than adults. The reasons for this are varied, ranging from not considering the act or the series of acts of violence to be important, to fear of further harm or revenge if it is found out that the victim reported to an adult. There is also often stigma attached to reporting, especially (but not only) for boys. In particular, all forms of bullying, teasing, xenophobia and homophobia are frequently not reported to adults. Under-reporting needs to be addressed by creating an atmosphere that allows learners to report when violence or safety threats have occurred, and to feel safe when reporting.

Identifying violence

It is frequently difficult to identify when a learner is being victimised because bullying and other forms of emotional violence are often not reported and may not result in physical injuries. Victimisation is even more difficult to identify in the older learner as many warning signs of bullying, abuse and violence may be confused with normal adolescent development. Learning to identify the signs of bullying is an important step in dealing effectively with violence and creating a positive school climate.

Dealing with children with learning difficulties/disabilities

Children with learning difficulties/disabilities have been identified as being at greater risk of becoming victims of violence. In addition, identification of victimisation is also often more difficult among children with learning difficulties. Therefore, school staff need to significantly minimise their risks as well as provide the necessary mental or psychosocial help. The school psychologist/life orientation educator/counsellor is particularly instrumental in this process.

Dealing with children with behavioural problems

Children who exhibit behavioural problems are frequently at greater risk for both perpetrating and falling victims to violence. Special effort is often required to provide appropriate support to children with behavioural problems while at the same time maintaining a classroom and school environment that is conducive to learning for the other children in the class.



8 BACKGROUND INFORMATION

Creating an environment that is conducive to learning

Effective classroom management can help to create an environment and space conducive to a positive discipline approach. It also makes teaching easier and less stressful. Classroom management involves:

- · Setting routines
- · Organisation
- · Classroom layout
- · Sharing responsibilities
- · Creating a safe and secure environment
- · Setting rules and procedures
- · Sanctions and rewards
- Planning
- · Atmosphere.

The best way to deal with undesirable behaviour is to prevent it happening in the first place. There are several things that educators can do to better maintain control in the classroom:

- **Tip 1.** Clearly communicate expectations: Learners should know exactly what is expected of them and precisely what kinds of behaviour are unacceptable and not permitted.
- **Tip 2.** Make lessons interesting: Develop activities that both complement the subject matter and keep learners interested and busy.
- **Tip 3.** Allocate and use time effectively: Always keep learners occupied constructively. Arrange some additional activities in case you or they finish content quicker than expected. Keep time between tasks or lessons as short as possible.
- **Tip 4.** Keep lessons flowing: Deal with disruptions immediately and with as little interruption as possible.
- **Tip 5.** Start fresh every day: Start teaching each day with the expectation that the learners will behave. Do not hold a grudge or assume that a particular learner will misbehave.

Applying a human rights-based approach

A rights-based approach strives to secure the freedom, well-being and dignity of all people everywhere, within the framework of essential standards and principles, duties and obligations. The rights-based approach supports mechanisms to ensure that entitlements are attained and safeguarded. In a rights-based approach, every human being is recognised as a person and as a rights-holder.

Governments have three levels of obligation: to respect, protect and fulfil every right.

- To respect a right means refraining from interfering with the enjoyment of the right.
- To *protect* the right means enacting laws that create mechanisms to prevent violation of the right by state authorities or by non-state actors. This protection is to be granted equally to all.
- To fulfil the right means to take active steps to put in place institutions and procedures, including the
 allocation of resources to enable people to enjoy the right. A rights-based approach develops the
 capacity of duty-bearers to meet their obligations and encourage rights-holders to claim their rights
 (UNFPA n.d.).

Necessary, specific and unique elements of a human rights-based approach:

- 1. Assessment and analysis to identify the human rights claims of rights-holders and the corresponding human rights obligations of duty-bearers as well as the immediate, underlying and structural causes of the non-realisation of rights.
- 2. Programmes assess the capacity of rights-holders to claim their rights and of duty-bearers to fulfil their obligations. They then develop strategies to build these capacities.
- 3. Programmes monitor and evaluate both outcomes and processes guided by human rights standards and principles.
- 4. Programming is informed by the recommendations of international human rights bodies and mechanisms.

Other elements of good programming practices essential under a human rights-based approach include:

- 1. People are recognised as key actors in their own development, rather than passive recipients of commodities and services.
- 2. Participation is both a means and a goal.
- 3. Strategies are empowering, not disempowering.
- 4. Both outcomes and processes are monitored and evaluated.
- 5. Analysis includes all stakeholders.
- 6. Programmes focus on marginalised, disadvantaged and excluded groups.
- 7. The development process is locally owned.
- 8. Programmes aim to reduce disparity.
- 9. Top-down and bottom-up approaches are used in synergy.
- 10. Situation analysis is used to identity immediate, underlying and basic causes of development problems.
- 11. Measurable goals and targets are important in programming.
- 12. Strategic partnerships are developed and sustained.
- 13. Programmes support accountability to all stakeholders.

Note: The first 12 points are drawn from the United Nations HRBA portal. The last is drawn from the Australian Human Rights Commission (n.d.).

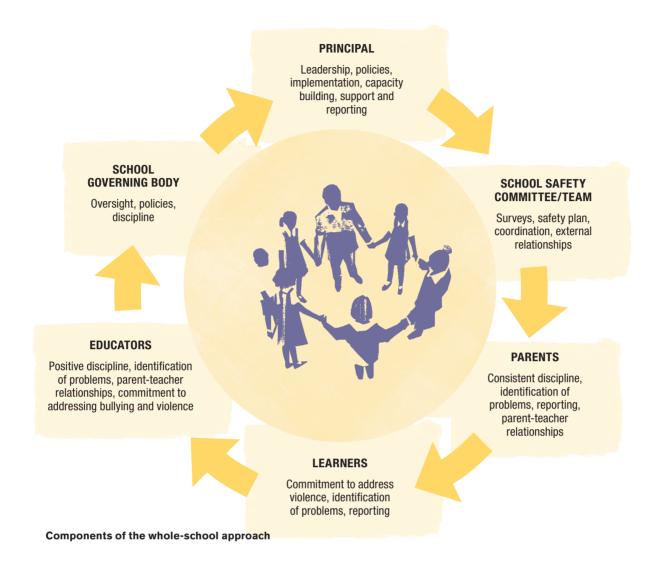
THE WHOLE-SCHOOL APPROACH TO SCHOOL SAFETY

The whole-school approach recognises that a school consists of several stakeholders: learners, educators, principals, school management teams, school governing bodies, parents and caregivers. It is therefore imperative that all these stakeholders be involved in any violence reduction or eradication strategy. This further requires the implementation of a carefully targeted, coherent system of programmes and interventions that complement, rather than duplicate, each other.

According to the National School Safety Framework, a whole-school approach to safety involves using multiple strategies that have a unifying purpose and reflect a common set of values. This requires the continuous support and dedication of school administrators, principals, educators, support staff, learners and caregivers. All the components of the system need to work together to create a safe and



8 BACKGROUND INFORMATION



supportive school climate in which people feel they belong and where violence of any kind is not tolerated.

Establishing a positive ethos and environment

Each and every school needs to create an inclusive, respectful culture that promotes and protects respect for human rights. School management teams need to promote democratic management and decision-making at all levels. They must also function within a policy framework that is in line with South Africa's Constitution and legislation.

Involving caregivers and communities

Schools must work with caregivers to understand and address issues around GBV. Schools can also tap into and support activities within the broader community. Identifying and establishing linkages with relevant community stakeholders can help schools to provide specific and specialised interventions and support which help to ensure that activities within schools and communities complement one another. The development of partnerships acknowledges that the school's primary function is that of teaching and learning, and that specialised expertise exists within the community that can enrich the school and its population.

Curriculum development

The National School Safety Framework encourages schools' need to develop and integrate teaching materials into existing curricula to support the achievement of a safe and respectful environment. Respect for human rights needs to be incorporated into all relevant curricula to equip children with the information and skills to help create a safe school.

It is important that strategies be informed by high-quality information to ensure responsive interventions. The collection and analysis of data on changes in the safety of educators and learners can also help schools to assess how well interventions are working and if and where changes are necessary. A well-functioning monitoring and evaluation system can help schools to feel confident about their progress in achieving a safer, violence-free school environment.

The following stakeholders each play an important role in a whole-school approach to violence:

- Principal leadership, policies, implementation, capacity-building and support.
- **Safety committee** safety plan, coordination and external relationships.
- Parents consistent discipline, identification of problems, reporting, parent/ educator relationships.
- **Learners** commitment to address violence, reporting.
- Educators positive discipline, identification of problems, parent/educator relationships.
- School governing bodies oversight and policies.

THE ROLE OF THE POLICE IN SUPPORTING SAFETY AT SCHOOLS

The South African Police Service has an important role to play in supporting schools to achieve and maintain safety and also in locating the school within a safer community. The Department of Basic Education and the South African Police Service have entered into a partnership to reduce crime and violence in schools and communities.

The purpose of this partnership, known as the Safety in Education Partnership Protocol (2011) is to promote safer schools and prevent the involvement of young people in crime. It is done through the South African Police Service Crime Prevention Component (Division: Visible Policing) and the Directorate: School Safety and Enrichment Programmes (Branch: Social Mobilisation and Support Services).

The aims of the Protocol are:

- · To render a school-based crime prevention service that is preventative and proactive and characterised by the development and implementation of interventions that deter potential offenders and empower potential victims and past victims.
- · To encourage an integrated and multi-disciplinary approach towards crime prevention and development, and to mobilise relevant stakeholders to participate in a broad network of services to protect children and transform all schools into safe, caring and child-friendly institutions.
- To use a community-based and inclusive approach to address the needs of communities through effective schools-based crime prevention and policing
- To promote proactive interventions that enrich early childhood development and to promote resilience against offending behaviour at the earliest possible opportunity.



- To assist in building capacity for the school community, especially learners, to prevent and manage school safety issues by promoting participation in the development, implementation, sustaining and evaluation of school safety programmes.
- To promote the image of the South African Police Service and build positive relationships between schools, police stations, children, school communities and the police.
- To promote the use of crime prevention in order to ensure school safety and to build understanding regarding the importance of prevention and the shared responsibility that everyone (officials from departments, individuals and organisations) has for the prevention of crime.

The objectives and the priorities of the Protocol are:

 To create safe, caring and child-friendly schools where quality teaching and learning can take place and address incidents of crime and violence in a holistic and integrated manner. This requires the formation of partnerships with all relevant stakeholders to assist crime prevention agencies to harness the needed resources and accelerate the process of developing safe and healthy environments for young people.

Some of the points to remember about relying on the police in school:

- Police searches within schools represent only short-term, stop-gap measures
 which may address immediate concerns over alcohol, drugs and weapons being
 brought into schools but are unlikely to yield any meaningful change in the levels
 of safety within schools over the medium term. The behaviour of learners and the
 underlying causes remain unaddressed and the school is in no better position to
 identify and manage threats.
- 'Problem' behaviour is criminalised. The risk is that learners are forced out of the education system, either because they are removed or because they are more likely to drop out or go truant.
- Everyday, repetitive acts of violence such as bullying, homophobic or hate-related bullying or cyberbullying, which often escalate to more serious injuries, are not dealt with. Action is only taken in the most serious crimes, where knives, guns and other weapons are used, and children are injured and killed.
- At a very practical level, the police cannot be a permanent presence in schools.
 They are also not trained as social workers or psychologists, and are in no position to address the underlying drivers of problem behaviour.

NOTES		

FACILITATOR'S GUIDELINES FOR

WorkShop 8

WORKSHOP LENGTH:

2 HOURS 30 MINUTES

OBJECTIVES

The objectives of the workshop are to:

- Recognise that violence in schools can only be addressed by a multistakeholder approach using various strategies.
- Create an understanding of what works and what the challenges are in adopting a whole-school approach.
- Provide guidance on the importance of a human rights-based approach and understanding of GBV.
- Explore how the *National School Safety Framework* can be used to support a whole-school approach to GBV.

OUTCOMES

At the end of the workshop, participants will be able to:

- Understand how all components of the school system need to work together to create a safe and supportive school climate where violence is not tolerated at all.
- Understand who the key stakeholders are and what their roles and responsibilities are in responding effectively to GBV.
- Understand the challenges and identify the best strategies to respond effectively.
- Recognise the complexity of GBV and work with a human rights-based approach.
- Use the National School Safety Framework to support a whole-school approach to GBV.

OUTLINE

- Introduction (10 minutes)
- **Topic 1.** The extent of violence, including GBV, in schools (20 minutes)
- Topic 2. Towards preventing violence: the WHO ecological model (20 minutes)
- Topic 3. The effects of violence on learners and educators (20 minutes)
- **Topic 4.** Why are safe schools important for safe communities and vice versa? (15–20 minutes)
- Topic 5. Achieving safety in schools: challenges and responses (20 minutes)
- Topic 6. Using a human rights-based approach to GBV (20 minutes)
- **Topic 7.** Using the *National School Safety Framework* to enable a whole-school approach to GBV (20 minutes)

MATERIALS

- National School Safety Framework document
- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- · PowerPoint presentations or overhead projectors

WORKSHOP 8 HANDOUTS

HANDOUT 5



A WHOLE-SCHOOL APPROACH TO SCHOOL SAFETY







GUIDELINES FOR PRESENTING TOPICS

WorkShop 8

TIPS FOR THE FACILITATOR



Facilitators should read the *Background information* on GBV (Workshop 1) and *A School Policy on GBV* (Workshop 7) before conducting Workshop 8.

It is essential to read the *Background information* sections because they will help you support and respond to participants and give input. If you wish to make PowerPoint presentations or overhead projector transparencies, we have indicated in the workshop guidelines where in the *Background information* you will find the relevant information.

Note: The handouts for this workshop do not extend to the toolkit supplied in the *National School Safety Framework*. Decide what to copy from the document (i.e. the reporting forms and learner/educator surveys) to share with participants.

LENGTH:



INTRODUCTION

Give an overview of the workshop and its objectives and do a warm-up activity to assist introductions if participants need to get acquainted.

TOPIC 1. THE EXTENT OF VIOLENCE, INCLUDING GBV, IN SCHOOLS

MATERIALS

- Flipchart
- Flipchart paper
- Laptop and projector
- Markers
- Background information pages 232-234

Task. Identifying types of violence experienced in our schools

Small group brainstorm. Organise groups of 3 or 4 participants, each with a marker and flipchart paper. Ask them to brainstorm answers to the following questions for no longer than 5 minutes:

- · What are the most common types of violence experienced in your schools and school districts?
- How much of this violence is gender-based, e.g. sexual harassment/bullying and abuse, sexual assault and rape?
- What do you think are the main factors driving the violence?

Report back. Let groups briefly display and explain their responses.

PowerPoint/oral input presentation. Use Background information on page 232 on the findings on the nature and extent of school violence. Encourage participants to compare the experiences at their schools with the research findings.





LENGTH:

20
MINUTES

TOPIC 2. TOWARDS PREVENTING VIOLENCE: THE WHO ECOLOGICAL MODEL

MATERIALS

- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- Handout 1. The ecological risk model
- · Background information pages 234 and 235

Task. Looking at risk factors and protective factors

Whole group. Emphasise that the signs, causes and effects of violence – especially GBV – are complex. We need to understand them better in order to appreciate how high the risk of GBV in our schools might be, or even to recognise GBV when we see it, and respond appropriately. This topic and task will support understanding of the risks at different levels in our learners' environment and the factors that can protect children against violence.

Draw the WHO ecological risk model on the flipchart or board and introduce the model. You could also present the *Background information* on page 234 using a PowerPoint presentation.

Small group discussion. Distribute Handout 1. Ask participants to consider the risk factors in the different levels and to add factors from their earlier task, or others they may think of that are not included. Ask them to add protective factors on the empty right-hand side. There are some examples on the handout to get them started. (The complete version of this information can be found in *Background information*, page 236 and 237.)

Report back. Lead discussions and elicit any protective factors that have been missed.

In wrapping up, re-emphasise that this model shows us how different influences work and interact at different levels. Thus, the origins and the effects of violence are more complex and layered than we may have realised and require response at several levels.

TOPIC 3. THE EFFECTS OF VIOLENCE ON LEARNERS AND EDUCATORS

MATERIALS

- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- · Background information pages 238-240

Task. Sharing mini-stories about the effects of violence

Whole group. Remind participants that every single act of violence at school or in the learner's home and community is an important event that impacts significantly on the lives of those directly involved (especially the victim, but also the perpetrator). It is also an event in the life of those who join in briefly, watch or help. It has a cumulative effect, especially if repeated, and the effect spreads. In this way, violence becomes a significant part of the story of the school as a whole.

Therefore, while examining the effects of violence it is useful to recall actual stories and the impact on people we know. Bullying - and especially GBV - flourishes when the survivors and their stories are not recognised and considered important.

Small group discussion. Ask participants to share cases and events they are familiar with, focusing mainly on the way these affected the learners and/or the educators involved. They could share any case/s of violence, particularly GBV (e.g. sexual bullying) they witnessed, dealt with as a teacher or experienced personally.

Report back. Record the effects participants identify on a flipchart or as a PowerPoint presentation. They can suggest strategies that could be used or were used to mitigate each of these effects. Record these on the flipchart as you lead the discussion. Provide any additional relevant input (Background information pages 238-240).



Be sure to support any participants who become emotionally distressed as a consequence of recalling traumatic events. Because facilitators might not be trained to deal with such issues, they should, at the very least, be familiar with services for trauma survivors in their area and be able to provide people with details of someone to speak to.





TOPIC 4. WHY ARE SAFE SCHOOLS IMPORTANT FOR SAFE COMMUNITIES AND VICE VERSA?

MATERIALS

- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- Background information pages 238 and 239

Task. How a safe school benefits the community and vice versa

Introduction. Remind participants about the inter-relationship between school and community (see the ecological risk model). How can this inter-relationship work to prevent violence?

Small group discussion. If there are participants from both schools and the community, organise separate groups for school and community participants.

Ask the school group/s to discuss why safe communities are important for safe schools and the community groups to discuss why safe schools are important for safe communities.

In essence, each group must prepare to share with the other group what important benefits they gain if the other is a safe environment.

Report back. Lead the discussion and summarise key points. Emphasise that if either school or community is an unsafe environment, the violence-related problems will tend to permeate from one to the other. However, schools and communities can combine to create and maintain safe schools. In turn, schools will make their communities safer and enable development by building children's resilience and self-esteem and encouraging positive behaviour. This is the foundation of a whole-school approach to violence.

TOPIC 5. ACHIEVING SAFETY IN SCHOOLS: CHALLENGES AND RESPONSES

MATERIALS

- Flipchart paper
- Markers
- · Handout 2. Girls' experiences
- Handout 3. The National School Safety Framework minimum requirements for school safety
- Background information pages 239 and 240

Task. Identifying challenges and priority responses

Whole group. Introduce the topic by pointing out that violence in the school, especially GBV, presents us with particular challenges when creating safe schools. Putting up a fence, or a stronger fence, is not enough: violence is already in the school and in many children's lives.

Small group discussion. Distribute Handout 2. Ask participants to discuss the case studies and consider the following: What issues are raised in these case studies? What are the challenges involved in addressing them?

Report back and facilitator input. Lead the feedback. In particular:

- Emphasise the complexity of GBV issues like those identified in the handout, particularly the common failure to recognise GBV, report it properly and follow up on incidents (even when extreme) because gender inequality and gendered violence have become normalised in communities and schools.
- Introduce the National School Safety Framework. Distribute Handout 3 and share the Framework's objectives and the minimum requirements for school safety which respond partly to the issues raised by the handout cases.

(You could use a PowerPoint presentation for input).

In wrapping up, explain that the final two topics in this workshop look at how we can increase our capacity to respond to violence - especially GBV - by using a whole-school approach, which creates capacity to ensure human rights.



LENGTH:



TOPIC 6. USING A HUMAN RIGHTS-BASED APPROACH TO GBV

MATERIALS

- · Flipchart paper
- Markers
- Handout 2. Girls' experiences
- Handout 4. Using a human rights-based approach
- Background information pages 240 and 241

Task. Exploring how the human rights-based approach applies to gender issues

Whole group. Distribute Handout 4. Read through it with participants and clarify where necessary. (Note that participants should be in their own stakeholder groups and not mixed.)

Small group discussion. Participants need to refer to Handout 2 while they discuss these questions:

- Why does a human rights-based approach respond especially well to the problems and challenges raised by experiences of GBV?
- How would you as a particular stakeholder or stakeholder group (educators, learners, caregivers, principal, school safety team, non-governmental organisation, etc.) see yourself as a duty-bearer? In your role, how could you respond to the issue of GBV experienced by learners?

Report back. Collect feedback from stakeholder groups and summarise on the flipchart.

TOPIC 7. USING THE NATIONAL SCHOOL SAFETY FRAMEWORK TO ENABLE A WHOLE-SCHOOL **APPROACH TO GBV**

MATERIALS

- · Flipchart paper
- Markers
- National School Safety Framework document
- · Handout 5. A whole-school approach to GBV
- Background information pages 241-243

Task. Upholding learners' rights though a wholeschool approach to GBV

Whole group. Distribute Handout 5. Present the key features using a PowerPoint presentation if you prefer. Emphasise how applying the National School Safety Framework at schools creates capacity to address the challenges of GBV and apply a human rights-based approach. In particular highlight:

- The roles the various stakeholders/duty bearers can play in identifying relevant rights and ensuring that they are respected, protected and fulfilled. Highlight the role of learners.
- The tools offered in the National School Safety Framework manual (e.g. surveys and reporting forms):
 - To help schools to identify and understand issues and threats such as GBV.
 - To guide schools to respond effectively to issues and threats.
 - To enable schools to report and manage incidents appropriately.
 - To enable schools to monitor school safety over time.



Invite questions from participants and summarise issues that emerge. Identify messages which respond to these issues and that extend participants' picture of the whole-school approach and the National School Safety Framework.

SUGGESTED FOLLOW-UP ACTIVITY

Participants use tools from the National School Safety Framework to identify, report on and monitor GBV in their schools.





workShop 8 HANDOUTS

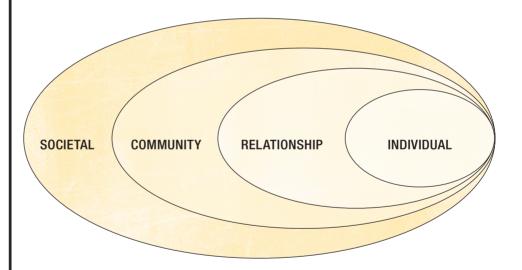


HANDOUT 1. THE ECOLOGICAL RISK MODEL

How violence arises: the ecological risk model

The causes and effects of violence, especially GBV, are complex. We need to understand them better in order to appreciate how high the risk of GBV in our school might be, to recognise GBV when we see it and especially to respond appropriately. The *National School Safety Framework* draws on the ecological risk model to gain the necessary insight. An ecological approach is based on the understanding that we can look at issues in society as we look at nature, taking into account the different levels of an environment and the interplay between them.

The four-level ecological risk model provides a framework within which we can understand and therefore address violence and its complex relationships. The model recognises that there is interplay between various individual, relationship, community and societal factors. The combination of risk and protective factors is influenced by an external environment. This impacts on how any individual adapts to their environment. Prevention strategies that use the four-level ecological model as a framework ensure that multiple factors are addressed which place people at risk of either becoming a victim or perpetrator of violence. The approach is best described by the model below.



An ecological approach – how school safety fits into a broader approach to safety and well-being

Risk and protective factors for violence

Read this table. Complete it with all the protective factors you can think of at each level. (Some protective factors have already been added to the table.)



	K FACTORS	PROTECTIVE FACTORS
Individual level Biolo	logical vulnerability	
Low	v self-esteem	
	ticipation in behaviours that langer health	
Intel	ellectual deterioration	
Early	ly or delayed puberty	
Diffi	ïcult temperament	
Impı	oulsiveness	
Affe	ective disorders	
	ention deficit hyperactivity order (ADHD)	
	ressive or defiant behaviour in ly childhood	
Read	action to stress	
Defi	iciencies in processing social	
infor	rmation	
	k of skills to resolve social blems	
	le instruction on parenting	Relationship with family
(family) Men	ntal illnesses in the family	Presence of parents
Fam	nily's participation in crimes	
	ents' consumption of illegal stances	
Mate	ternal stress	
Larg	ge family	
Over	ercrowding	
Pove	erty	
Acce	ess to weapons	
Auth pare	horitarian or permissive style of ents	
Fam	nily violence	
	ention in the same grade	Close relationship with school
(school) Size	e of school	
Abse	senteeism	
Susp	pensions	

8 HANDOUTS

SETTING	RISK FACTORS	PROTECTIVE FACTORS
Community level (friends)	Being the subject of prejudice by friends	
	Perception of threats	
	Social isolation	
	Participation in cultures that stray from the norm	
Social level	Arrests by age and type	Access to healthcare services
	Fertility rates in community, by ages	
	Unemployment rate by neighbourhood	
	Single-parent households/with female head of household	
	Age at time of emigration	
	Exposure to violent media	
	Exposure to youth-oriented advertising	
	Access to tobacco, alcohol, drugs or weapons	
	Watching television/videos	

Source: Adapted from Blum (2006) in the National School Safety Framework, page 11.

HANDOUT 2. GIRLS' EXPERIENCES

These experiences are drawn from "Gender-based Violence in South African Schools" (Wilson 2011)

"I feel really scared so during the day I do not go to the toilet. If I do I will ask a friend to stand watch so nothing happens. Usually the toilets are full of gangsters smoking dagga and if you go alone they will try to rape you."

15-year-old learner, Western Cape

"The levels of violence are worse now and it is getting difficult to help learners, especially those with no parents. How can you tell a girl who is hungry not to sell her body when she is desperate?"

GEM Club facilitator, Kwa-Zulu Natal

"Violence [towards] girls in school is not limited to explicit violence but also manifest[s] in implicit ways. Girls are required to provide cleaning and maintenance services...while teachers and boys use the time for academic work or leisure... I would protest that denying girls the opportunity to take part in learning is another form of violence."

Researcher

"My uncle travelled abroad for a few months and my aunt arranged for me to be married to a complete stranger, a 43-year-old man living in a village 199km away. One day after school, this man came to get me from school and told me to come with him - that he was my husband and my aunt [had] made all the arrangements. I [tried] to tell him that I must go and get my things, because I was thinking it would give me time to run away, but he said no and forced me into the car."

14-year-old female learner, Limpopo

"My teacher promised me a passing mark if I had sex with him. So when people ask me about studying, I just say: why should I study when all I have to do is lift my skirt?"

17-year-old female learner, Western Cape





8 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 3. THE NATIONAL SCHOOL SAFETY FRAMEWORK MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR SCHOOL SAFETY

The *National School Safety Framework* gives the following as minimum requirements for school safety:

- Minimum school-level policies and procedures are implemented and enforced, and learners, educators and non-educator staff are all aware of the contents of these policies;
- Safety audits are undertaken annually to stay abreast of the issues affecting safety and contributing to violence within the school;
- Safety plans are formulated, adopted, submitted and revised annually to respond to the safety threats within the school;
- There is constant engagement with community structures and actors who have specific roles to play in addressing violence occurring in the school;
- Reporting and response systems are developed, utilised and reviewed continuously to improve reporting mechanisms; and
- Monthly reporting systems have been established and utilised.

HANDOUT 4. USING A HUMAN RIGHTS-BASED APPROACH

GBV and gender inequality are not only South African phenomena. They are found worldwide, like other problems of discrimination and abuse such as racism. When injustices permeate all levels of society and are hard to eradicate, it is important to take a principled approach which upholds fundamental human rights, identifies discriminatory ideas and practices that threaten these rights, and holds society, institutions and individuals to account.

The principle of human rights is applied around the world, underpins our own National Constitution in the form of our Bill of Rights and is applied to all our laws. However, destructive forces and cultural patterns in society like GBV and gender inequality threaten and erode human rights and promote other interests in many spheres of life, and from day to day.

We therefore have to use strategies to secure these rights in all contexts of life, including the educational domain and our schools. A human rights-based approach helps us to do this. The National School Safety Framework is a set of tools that we can use as part of a human rights-based approach. It can be applied to help secure the following rights (among others) of learners at school:

- · The right to human dignity.
- The right to be free from all forms of violence.
- The right to security in and control over their body.
- The right not to be treated in a cruel, inhuman or degrading way.
- The right of children to be protected from maltreatment, neglect, abuse or degradation.
- That a child's best interests are of paramount importance in every matter concerning the child.

Some features of a human rights-based approach that can support action and change in violence and GBV at school are:

- Rights-holders are matched with duty-bearers who are responsible for ensuring that rights are upheld. Duty bearers should help to secure rights in a way appropriate to their role.
- The complex causes of problems are carefully analysed and understood when responding to human rights issues.
- Procedures must be put in place to ensure that rights are protected and also fulfilled, e.g. reporting and follow-up procedures on harassment.
- Partnerships of duty-bearers are important in protecting and fulfilling rights. For example, the different stakeholders in a 'whole-school' picture (teachers, the school governing body, parents, principal, etc.) are all duty-bearers with different responsibilities which need to work together.
- Participation is crucial at all levels and the rights-holder is not just a passive receiver of rights. Rights are secured and upheld not only from 'above' (e.g. the courts or the government), but also by rights-holders and duty-bearers identifying breaches and problems where they happen. This includes the participation of learners and all children.
- Accountability is also crucial so that processes of securing and protecting rights must be adhered to, monitored and evaluated.
- Children and their interests come first!





8 HANDOUTS



HANDOUT 5. A WHOLE-SCHOOL APPROACH TO SCHOOL SAFETY

The National Schools Safety Framework adopts what is termed a 'whole-school' approach to school safety, and includes practical school safety diagnostic tools that should be used by school learners, educators, principals and school governing bodies. It also provides guidance on the practical steps to implement a 'whole-school' approach, including the development of school safety plans, the engagement of key partners in the community, and monitoring and evaluation tools.

What is a whole-school approach?

The school is made up of several components, i.e. learners, educators, principals, school management teams, school governing bodies, and parents or caregivers. Together, these components interact and exist within the greater system of the home and community. Only by dealing with all aspects of the system, will violence ultimately be reduced and eradicated. This calls for a carefully targeted, coherent system of programmes and interventions that complement rather than duplicate each other. The success of the whole-school approach to school safety also rests partly in each component being aware of their roles and responsibilities in this broader system.

The whole-school approach, along with the roles and responsibilities of each stakeholder, is depicted in its entirety in this diagram.

A whole-school approach to safety involves using multiple strategies that have a unifying purpose and reflect a common set of values. This requires the continuous support and dedication of school administrators, principals, educators, support staff, learners, caregivers, school structures such as provincial-based safety teams and district-based safety teams, as well as a range of other community actors. It requires that all the components of the system work together to create a safe and supportive school climate in which people feel they belong and where violence of any kind is not tolerated.

Components of the whole-school approach

Establishing a positive ethos and environment

Each and every school needs to create an inclusive, respectful culture that promotes and protects respect for human rights. School management teams need to promote democratic management and decision-making at all levels. They must also function within a policy framework that is in line with South Africa's constitution and legislation, and protects and promotes safety and respect for human rights.

· Involving caregivers and communities

Schools need to work with caregivers to address and promote understanding of safety issues. Schools can also tap into and support activities within the broader community. Identifying and establishing linkages with relevant community stakeholders can help schools to provide specific and specialised interventions and support. It can also help to ensure that activities within schools and communities complement one another. The school will know exactly what is needed by learners and educators and can therefore give priority to those interventions. The development of partnership acknowledges that the school's

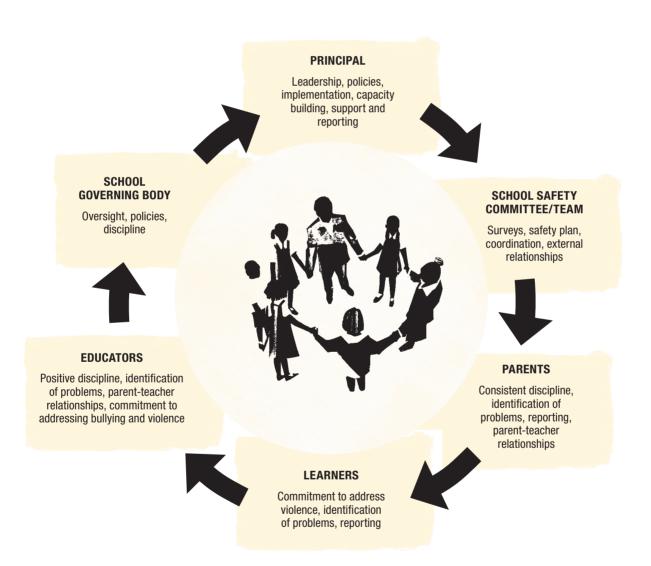
primary function is that of teaching and learning, and that specialised expertise exists within the community that can enrich the school and its population.

· Curriculum development

Schools need to develop and integrate teaching materials into existing curricula to support the achievement of safe and respectful environments. Respect for human rights needs to be incorporated into all relevant curricula and children need to be equipped with information and skills to help create a safer school.

· Creating an environment conducive to learning

Effective classroom management can help to create an environment and space that is conducive to a positive approach to discipline. It also makes teaching more successful, easier and less stressful.



Components of the whole-school approach



Appendices



REFERENCES AND RESOURCES

- Allsop, T. 2000. Personal communication. In Canada-South Africa Education Management Programme. 2001. Opening Our Eyes: Addressing Gender-based Violence in South African Schools a Module for Educators. Cape Town, South Africa: University of Western Cape.
- Amuyunzu-Nyamongo, Mary. 2013. Addressing the Links Between Gender-Based Violence and HIV in the Great Lakes Region. UNESCO.
- AusAID. 2013. "An Introduction to Counselling Concepts."
- Australian Human Rights Commission. n.d. "The Human Rights Based Approach to Development Cooperation Towards a Common Understanding Among UN Agencies." Accessed 14 April 2015, https://www.humanrights.gov.au/sites/default/files/content/social_justice/conference/engaging_ communities/un_common_understanding_rba.pdf
- Barker, Gary and Christine Ricardo. 2005. Young Men and the Construction of Masculinity in Sub-Saharan Africa: Implications for HIV/AIDS, Conflict, and Violence. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Berk, Richard A. 1990. "Thinking About Hate-Motivated Crimes." *Journal of Interpersonal Violence*, 5 (3): 334–349.
- Bhana, Deevia. 2012. "Understanding and Addressing Homophobia in Schools: a View from Teachers." South African Journal of Education 32 (3): 307–318.
- Blum, R. W. 2006. "Risk & Protective Factors in the Lives of Youth: The Evidence Base." Youth Development Notes. 1(4). Children and Youth Unit, Human Development Network, World Bank. In US Department of Health and Human Services, National Adolescent Health Information Center (NAHIC). 2004. Improving the Health of Adolescents and Young Adults: A Guide for States and Communities. Atlanta, Georgia.
- Bohn, Ted R. 1984. "Homophobic Violence: Implications for Social Work Practice." *Journal of Social Work and Human Sexuality*, 2 (2–3): 91–112.
- Bond. 1989. Community Action Research Conference.
- Britzman, Deborah P. 1995. "Is There a Queer Pedagogy? Or, Stop Reading Straight." Educational Theory, 45 (2): 151–165.
- Burton, Patrick. 2008. Merchants, Skollies and Stones. Experiences of School Violence in South Africa. Monograph Series No. 4. Cape Town: Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention.
- Burton, Patrick and Lezanne Leoschut. 2013. School Violence in South Africa: Results of the 2012 National School Violence Study. Monograph Series No. 12. Cape Town: Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention.
- Cady, Joseph. 1992. "Teaching Homosexual Literature as a 'Subversive' Act". In Minton, Henry I. 1992 (ed). *Gay and Lesbian Studies*. New York: Haworth Press.
- Cameron, Edwin and Mark Gevisser, eds. 1995. *Defiant Desire: Gay and Lesbian Lives in South Africa*. New York: Routledge.
- Campbell, Catherine, Yodwa Mzaidume and Brian Williams. 1998. "Gender as an Obstacle to Condom Use: HIV Prevention Amongst Commercial Sex Workers in a Mining Community." *Agenda*, 39, 50–57.



- Canada-South Africa Education Management Programme. 2001. Opening Our Eyes:

 Addressing Gender-based Violence in South African Schools a Module for
 Educators. Cape Town, South Africa: University of Western Cape.
- Department of Basic Education. 2011. Values in Action. Pretoria: DBE.
- ----. 2012. Integrated Strategy on HIV, STIs and TB 2012-2016. Pretoria: DBE.
- ----. 2013. Speak Out! Youth Report Sexual Abuse. Pretoria: DBE.
- ---. 2014a. Challenging Homophobic Bullying in Schools. Pretoria: DBE.
- ----. 2014b. National School Safety Framework. Pretoria: DBE.
- Department of Education. 2008. *Example of a Code of Conduct for a School*. Pretoria: DE, available at www.thutong.doe.gov.za/ResourceDownload. aspx?id=39278&userid.
- Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. 2014. National Intervention Strategy for Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender and Intersex (LGBTI) Sector.
- Francis, Dennis and Thabo Msibi. 2011. "Teaching About Heterosexism: Challenging Homophobia in South Africa." *Journal of LGBT Youth*, 8 (2): 157–173.
- Global Coalition on Women and AIDS. Feb. 2, 2004. Press release. "HIV Prevention and Protection Efforts Are Failing Women and Girls."
- Harris, Simon. 1990. Lesbian and Gay Issues in the English Classroom: the Importance of Being Honest. Milton Keynes: Open University Press.
- Herek, Gregory M. 1992. "The Social Context of Hate Crimes: Notes on Cultural Heterosexism." In Gregory Herek and K. Berrill (eds.), *Hate Crimes: Confronting Violence Against Lesbians and Gay Men*, 89–104. Newbury Park, California: Sage Publications.
- Human Rights Watch. 1995. Violence Against Women in South Africa: The State Response to Domestic Violence and Rape. New York: Human Rights Watch.
- ——. 2001. Scared At School: Sexual Violence Against Girls in South African Schools. New York: Human Rights Watch.
- Jewkes, Rachel, Jonathan Levin, Nolwazi Mbananga and Debbie Bradshaw. 2002. "Rape of Girls in South Africa." *The Lancet*, 359 (9303): 319–320.
- Langen, Tabitha T. 2007. "Gender Power Imbalance on Women's Capacity to Negotiate Self-Protection Against HIV/AIDS in Botswana and South Africa." *African Health Sciences*, 5 (3): 188–197.
- Leoschut, Lezanne. 2009. Running Nowhere Fast: Results of the 2008 National Youth Lifestyle Study, Monograph Series No. 6. Cape Town: Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention.
- Leoschut, Lezanne and Patrick Burton. 2006. How Rich the Rewards. Results of the 2005 National Youth Victimisation Study, Monograph Series No. 1. Cape Town: Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention.
- Luirink, Bart. 2000. Moffies: Gay Life in South Africa. Cape Town: David Philip Publishers.

- Madu, Sylvester Ntomchukwu and Karl Peltzer. 2001. "Prevalence and Patterns of Child Sexual Abuse and Victim-Perpetrator Relationship Among Secondary School Students in the Northern Province (South Africa)." *Archives of Sexual Behaviour*, 30 (3): 311–321.
- Medley, Amy, Claudia Garcia-Moreno, Scott McGill and Suzanne Maman. 2004. Rates, Barriers and Outcomes of HIV Serostatus Disclosure Among Women in Developing Countries: Implications for Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission Programmes. Bulletin of the World Health Organization, 82(4): 299–307.
- MIET Africa and KwaZulu-Natal Department of Education. 2009. Education for All. A Guide to Building Schools as Inclusive Centres of Learning, Care and Support. Durban: MIET Africa.
- ---. 2010. My Life! My Future! Staying Healthy. Durban: MIET Africa.
- ——. 2011. Let's Talk: Breaking the Silence Around Sexual Abuse and Teenage Pregnancy. Durban: MIET Africa.
- Msibi, Thabo. 2012. "I'm Used to it Now': Experiences of Homophobia Among Queer Youth in South African Township Schools." *Gender and Education*, 24 (5): 515–533, http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/09540253.2011.645021.
- Parker, Warren, Benjamin Makhubele, Pumla Ntlabati and Cathy Connolly. 2007.

 Concurrent Sexual Partnerships Amongst Young Adults in South Africa: Challenges for HIV Prevention Communication. CADRE.
- Pettifor, Audrey E., Diana M. Measham, Helen V. Rees, and Nancy S. Padian. 2004. Sexual Power and HIV Risk, South Africa. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, 10 (11).
- Pettifor, Audrey E., Lindiwe Hlongwa-Madikizela, Catherine MacPhail, Helen V. Rees and Annie Steffenson. 2004. *HIV and Sexual Behaviour Among Young South Africans: a National Survey of 15–24 Year-Olds*. Johannesburg: Reproductive Health Research Unit, University of the Witwatersrand.
- Potgieter, Cheryl and Finn C.G. Reygan. 2012. "Lesbian, Gay and Bisexual Citizenship: a Case Study as Represented in a Sample of South African Life Orientation Textbooks." *Perspectives in Education*, 30 (4): 39–51.
- Prinsloo, Sakkie. 2006. "Sexual Harassment and Violence in South African Schools." South African Journal of Education, 26 (2): 305–318.
- Reddy, S.P., R.G. Omardien, S. James, N.S. Kambaran, S. Sifunda, A. Ellahebokus, R. Sewpaul. 2013. *Umthente Uhlaba Usamila: the 3rd South African National Youth Risk Behaviour Survey 2011*. Human Sciences Research Council.
- Rees, Helen. 1998. "The Search for Female-Controlled Methods of HIV Prevention." Agenda, 39: 44–49.
- SADC. Workshop developed as part of "Speak Out! Addressing Sexual Abuse and Violence Against Children and Youth". Ministries of Education and MIET Africa through Care and Support for Teaching and Learning (CSTL). SADC.
- Shisana, Olive, Rehle, T., Simbayi, L.C., Zuma, K., Jooste, S., Zungu N., Labadarios, D., Onoya, D. et al. 2014. *South African National HIV Prevalence, Incidence and Behaviour Survey, 2012.* Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Sonke Gender Justice and MenEngage. n.d. Concept note and literature review. "Masculinities, Alcohol and Gender-Based Violence: Bridging the Gaps."
- South African Council of Educators. 2011. School-Based Violence Report: An Overview of School-Based Violence in South Africa. SACE.
- South African Human Rights Commission. 2008. Report of the Public Hearing on School-Based Violence, 2006. Johannesburg: SAHRC.

- UNAIDS. 1999. "Women, HIV and AIDS." In Canada–South Africa Education Management Programme. 2001. Opening Our Eyes: Addressing Gender-Based Violence in South African Schools a Module for Educators. Cape Town, South Africa: University of Western Cape.
- ----. 2000. Global Strategy Framework on Young People with HIV/AIDS.
- ----. 2010. Fact sheet. "Women, Girls, Gender Equality and HIV." Geneva: UNAIDS.
- ----. 2014. The Gap Report. Geneva: UNAIDS.
- UNFPA website. "The Human Rights-Based Approach." Accessed 14 April 2015, http://www.unfpa.org/rights/approaches.htm.
- UNHCR. 2003. Sexual and Gender-Based Violence Against Refugees, Returnees and Internally Displaced Persons: Guidelines for Prevention and Response. United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees.
- United Nations HRBA portal. "UN Practitioners' Portal on Human Rights Based Approach to Programming. Accessed 25 May 2015, http://hrbaportal.org.
- USAID. 2009. Doorways III: Teacher Training Manual. School-Related Gender-Based Violence Prevention and Response Manual. USAID.
- Western Cape Government website. "What is the Child Protection Register?" Accessed 23 April 2015, https://www.westerncape.gov.za/general-publication/what-child-protection-register.
- Williams, Trish, Jennifer Connolly, Debra Pepler and Wendy Craig. 2005. "Peer Victimization, Social Support, and Psychosocial Adjustment of Sexual Minority Adolescents." *Journal of Youth and Adolescence*, 34 (5): 471–482.
- Wilson, Felicia. 2011. Working document. "Gender-Based Violence in South African Schools." International Institute for Educational Planning, UNESCO.
- World Bank. 2009. "Gender-Based Violence, Health and the Role of the Health Sector". World Bank.

LEGISLATION

Child Justice Act 75 of 2008.

Children's Act 38 of 2005, amended 2007.

Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act (also called the Sexual Offences Act) of 2007.

SACE Code of Professional Ethics.

South African Schools Act 84 of 1996.

GLOSSARY

Age of consent 16 years. (Ages 0 to under 11 years cannot consent; ages 12 years to 15 years may consent

to one whose age is not more than two years older than than of the consenting party).

Bigotry Intolerance towards those who hold different opinions from oneself.

Bisexual A person who is attracted to both men and women and is capable of having romantic, sexual,

intimate feelings for/or a love relationship with someone of the same sex and/or with someone

of the opposite sex.

Bullying Involves one or more people singling out and deliberately and repeatedly hurting or harming

physically or mentally another person or group of people.

Child A person who is under the age of 18, or with reference to sections 15 and 16 of the Sexual

Offences Amendment Act, a person 12 years or older but under the age of 16 years.

Child abuse Verbal, physical and sexual abuse of children.

Child sexual abuse Takes place when an adult, adolescent or older child exploits a child for sexual purposes, with

or without the child's consent.

Consent Voluntary or unforced agreement, i.e. must freely, willingly and deliberately agree. Understand

what he/she is consenting to.

Counselling A process of helping another person to resolve his/her feelings in relation to a problematic

situation.

Economic abuse Taking a victim's money, refusing to provide money for household expenses, not paying

maintenance.

Emotional, verbal and psychological abuse

Name-calling, yelling and belittling the victim, threatening to kill the victim, self or others, isolating

the victim.

Gay A woman or man who is sexually, physically, emotionally and romantically attracted to another

person of the same sex.

Gender identity The term gender identity refers to how we see ourselves as male or female.

Gender-based violence

(GBV)

Any form of violence directed against women, girls, boys and men on the basis of socially

attributed differences between males and females.

Harassment can be defined as unreasonably following, watching, pursuing or accosting

(approaching or addressing someone else aggressively) a person (or related person) or loitering outside of or near a building or place where a person (or related person) resides, works, carries

on business, studies or happens to be.

Hate crime The violence of intolerance and bigotry (intolerance towards people who hold different opinions

to oneself), intended to hurt and intimidate someone because of their race, ethnicity, national

origin, religion, sexual orientation or disability.

Heterosexual Emotional, physical and sexual attraction to people of the opposite sex.

HIV prevalence Usually given as a percentage, HIV prevalence quantifies the proportion of individuals in a

population who have HIV at a specific point in time.

Homophobia This term is used to describe the irrational, extreme fear, loathing and intolerance that some

people feel towards those whose sexual orientation is towards members of their own sex rather

than towards members of the opposite sex.

Intergenerational sex Refers to sex between adolescent girls and boys and older partners.

Intersex Is a person whose body is neither typically male nor typically female.

Lesbian Is a woman who is sexually, physically, emotionally and romantically attracted to another woman.

Physical abuse Pushing, slapping, punching, kicking, burning, biting or stabbing.

Protection order A form of legal injunction that requires a party to do or to refrain from doing certain acts (e.g. to

stop abusing or contacting the complainant, or being made to leave a shared residence).

Racism The belief that all members of a race possesses characteristics or abilities specific to that race,

especially to distinguish it as inferior or superior to another race.

Rape Intentionally and unlawfully committing an act of sexual penetration with a complainant without

his/her consent.

Sexism Prejudice, stereotyping or discrimination, typically against women, on the basis of sex.

Sexual abuse Any conduct that abuses, humiliates, degrades or otherwise violates the sexual integrity of the

complainant.

Sexual act An act of sexual penetration or an act of sexual violation.

that such attention is unwelcome; unwelcome explicit (direct) or implicit (indirect) behaviour, suggestions, messages or remarks of a sexual nature that have the effect of offending,

intimidating or humiliating the complainant or a related person.

Sexual orientation Your sexual orientation refers to the attraction you feel towards people of one sex or another (or

both).

Sexual penetration Any act which causes penetration by: (1) The genital organs of one person into or beyond the

genital organs, anus or mouth of another person; (2) Any other part of the body of one person or, any object, including any part of the body of an animal, into or beyond the genital organs or anus of another person; and (3) The genital organs of an animal into or beyond the mouth of

another person.

Sexual violation Involves the sexualised touching of a person's intimate parts, or forcing a person to touch

another person's intimate parts. Intimate parts include the mouth, vagina, penis, inner thighs,

buttocks and breasts.

Sexual/gender-based

violence

Includes many types of physical and psychological violence such as wife-beating, rape, incest,

sexual violation and harassment.

Stalking Following, constant phoning, waiting outside the victim's workplace or home.

Statutory rape An act of consensual sexual penetration with a child. 16 years is the age of consent.

Statutory sexual assault An act of consensual sexual violation with a child.

Transgender A person who does not conform to the sex to which they are assigned at birth (e.g. boys who are

physically boys but feel themselves to be girls, and girls who feel they are really boys).

Violence The intentional use of physical force or power, threatened or actual, against oneself, another

person or against a group or community that either results in or has a high likelihood of resulting

in injury, death, psychological harm, maldevelopment or deprivation.

Window period The period between the onset of HIV infection and the appearance of detectable antibodies to

the virus.

Xenophobia The unreasoned fear of that which is perceived to be foreign or strange.

